PRACTICAL LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

By
J. W. CORNFORTH, M.A.
Late Senior Classical and English Master, The Armidale School, Armidale, N.S.W.,
AND
G. E. EDGINGTON, B.A.
Mistress of Classics, Sydney Girls' High School

THIRD EDITION, REVISED

AUSTRALIA
ANGUS & ROBERTSON LIMITED
89 CASTLEREAGH STREET, SYDNEY
1936

Set up, printed and bound in Australia by Halstead Printing Company, Ltd., Nickson Street, Sydney 1936

Registered at the General Post Office, Sydney, for transmission through the post as a book

PREFACE

There are many excellent manuals from which the rudiments of Latin Prose Composition may be learnt. It is, therefore, with a certain diffidence that the authors put forward a new book, especially since they have no innovations to offer. They have, nevertheless, as a result of their experience in the peculiar problems which affect the teaching of Latin in Australian schools, ventured to alter the rhythm of the standard books by emphasizing the rules for the use of the Participle and of the Indirect Question. This has been done—so far as it concerns the Participle—both by fullness of treatment and by placing the doctrine of the Participle among the rules for simple sentences. By this device it is hoped that the economy of expression which the Latin Participle makes possible, will be understood more readily than it is when learners have already become accustomed to the use of the complex sentence.

The emphasis on the Indirect Question has been obtained by an effort to provide a great number of English sentences of a type which require—though not too obviously—the use of this construction in Latin.

Throughout the book an attempt has been made to provide English sentences which are not merely Anglicised Latin. It may be thought that in some instances this effort has been carried too far. But the authors hope that teachers will make it a practice to read the exercises to their classes before allowing the pupils to attempt them. Such a practice is inexpensive of time and, when accompanied by a hint or two with regard to the simplicity and directness of the Latin, will yield a disproportionate reward.

The authors' task was made more difficult by their attempt to trace in outline—but in intelligible outline—the history of Rome. Too few of our pupils learn Roman history and it is hoped that teachers, possibly in response to questions which the passages provoke, will find time to lift at least a corner of the veil which shrouds this fascinating subject. To this end the authors have tried to say nothing, even in the sentences, which would convey a false impression of Roman life and its various manifestations.

The vocabulary is not exclusively Caesarian.

Certainly the Romans were doughty warriors but they possessed other qualities, and if their minds lacked the flexibility of the Greek mind they at any rate possessed a practical intelligence in promoting material progress which their more gifted neighbours lacked. Words and phrases common to their politics and statecraft have therefore been included in this book.

The authors recommend that Intermediate candidates attempt the continuous pieces included in Part I and then, after doing each set of sentences on the various rules in Part II, proceed to tackle the pieces specially written for their practice which commence on page 240.

It has been thought advisable to collect and group the phrases used in the book and they appear therefore on page 316. A list of irregular verbs in alphabetical order has also been supplied.

To the many friends who have contributed valuable suggestions the authors take this further opportunity of expressing their gratitude.

J. W. C.
G. E. E.

CONTENTS

PART ONE

VERBS WITH TWO NOMINATIVES
VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES

Consider the English: *Cicero is consul*:
Latin: Cicero est consul:

The words 'Cicero' and 'consul' are in the same case because they mean the same person and 'est' merely *links* the two words.

Now consider the English: *Cicero is elected consul.*
Latin: Cicero creatur consul.

The words 'Cicero' and 'consul' again mean the same person and 'creatur' links them together. They are in the same case.

Rule 1. **Passive verbs of 'making' and 'calling'—link verbs—take the same case after as before.**

Such verbs are:

appellari	to be called.	existimari	to be considered.
creari	to be elected.	fieri	to be made, to become.
eligi	to be chosen.	salutari	to be hailed.
videri	to seem.	vocari	to be called.
putari	to be deemed.		

In the Active these verbs take two accusatives.

Ex. ***The citizens elect Cicero consul.***
Cives Ciceronem consulem creant.

Rule 2. **Certain verbs of teaching, asking, hiding, take two accusatives in Latin—one of the person, the other of the thing.**

Ex. ***He taught Balbus letters.***
Litteras Balbum docuit.

I hid a sword from my father.
Patrem gladium celavi.
Caesar demanded corn from the Aedui.
Caesar frumentum Aeduos flagitavit.

Obs. 1. Rogo, I ask, takes this construction only when the thing asked for is expressed by the accusative neuter of a pronoun or adjective, or by 'sententiam.'

Dic mihi hoc, quod te rogo.
Tell me what I ask you!

Obs. 2. But the following constructions are more frequently used after verbs of 'requiring' and 'asking.'

You are asking water from a pumice-stone.
Aquam a pumice postulas.
We asked him about the battle.
De proelio eum rogavimus.

Obs. 3. With 'petere' use an accusative of the thing and ab (+ abl.) of the person.

Exercise 1

He shows himself brave. Virum fortem se praebet.

1. The citizens elect Metellus praetor.
2. Metellus was made praetor by the votes of all the centuries.
3. They call you leader of the Senate.
4. You were chosen leader of the army by the soldiers of the tenth legion.
5. He was called king and friend by Caesar.
6. Cicero was considered a good consul.
7. Few become consuls.
8. The Aedui are considered very brave soldiers.
9. Because the soldiers chose Caesar general, the senators called them traitors.
10. He showed himself a brave man.

Exercise 2

Cicero was asked for his opinion.	Cicero sententiam rogatus est.

1. He asked me for a book which I did not have.

2. We were asked for the book which we were hiding from our master.

3. We shall not be taught letters by a slave.

4. Caesar demanded money from the citizens but because he was not considered a wise leader they hid their money from him.

5. Marius, whom the citizens had just elected consul, was thought (to be) a wise general.

6. He was hailed as commander-in-chief by the consul.

7. Cicero will be asked for his opinion by the consul.

8. The ambassadors asked the general for peace.

9. Caesar led his forces across the Rhine.

10. Caesar's soldiers, whom he had greeted as victors, were led across the Rhine.

Exercise 3

With good reason.	Cum causa.
Without good reason.	Sine causa.

Not without good reason did the Romans trace back the beginning of their city to the god Mars. For Mars was the god of war and the Romans have always been considered a very warlike race. And so this story has been handed down to memory: Rhea Silvia bore twin sons whose father was Mars. But her uncle, the king, hated the boys, and by his orders they were placed in a box and thrown into the river.

Exercise 4

Whereupon.	Quo facto.
And . . . not.	Nec (neque).

But by chance the water was not deep and the boys were not drowned. Indeed they were found by a certain shepherd who carried them to his cottage. There he gave the boys to his wife, Laurentia, by whom they were brought up. She proved to be a wise and kindly mother. When they became young men they were considered brave and clever leaders of the shepherds and often fought against robbers. Remus, however, was captured and taken to the King. Whereupon Romulus, who was very angry at this, collected a large band of friends and hurried to the city.

THE SIMPLE QUESTION

Simple questions in English are of two kinds:

(a) Those introduced by some interrogative pronoun adjective or adverb: e.g. who? what book? where? how many?

(b) Those in which the question is indicated only by an inversion of subject and verb: e.g. will he come? do you think so?

Rule 3. **Questions introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective or adverb, in English, are thus introduced in Latin also.**

Learn this list of interrogatives.

quis? quid?	who? what?
qualis, -e?	of what kind?
quantus, -a, -um?	how great?
quot? (indeclinable adj.)	how many?
ubi?	where?
unde?	whence?
quo?	whither?
quando?	when?
quamdiu?	how long?
quoties?	how often?
quomodo?	how? i.e. in which way.
quam?	how? (with adj. or adv.)
uter, utra, utrum?	which of the two?
cur?	why?

Obs. 1. quis? and quid? are pronouns. The corresponding adjective is qui? quae? quod?

Thus:

quis venit? *Who is coming?*
qui miles venit? *What soldier is coming?*
quid fecit? *What has he done?*
quod consilium cepit? *What plan has he formed?*
quae mulier hoc fecit? *What woman has done this?*

Obs. 2. Pay special attention to the translation of English where?

Where is the general? Ubi est dux?
Where are you going? Quo itis?
Where does he come from? Unde venit?

Thus when 'where'='where to' use QUO.
'where'='where from' use UNDE.

Exercise 5

What is the island like? Qualis est insula?
How great is the army? Quantus est exercitus?

1. How long will you, who have never loved cities, remain here?
2. Why was Cicero considered a good consul?
3. What sort of a general have you, soldiers?
4. How often was he elected consul?
5. Which of the two will be elected tribune of the people?
6. By the votes of how many centuries was Marius elected consul?
7. What disgraceful deed has this man committed?
8. To what friend have you given the book?
9. How great an army does the general lead?
10. When will he come? Where does he come from? Where is he going?
11. From what city does he come? By whom was he guided? What friends greeted him?
12. What is the size of the army the general leads?

Exercise 6

How quickly.	Quam celeriter.
As quickly as possible.	Quam celerrime.

1. How many consuls were elected by the citizens?
2. Where are you now? Where are you going?
3. What is the nature of the plan the general has formed?
4. By how many soldiers was the general elected?
5. How are consuls elected?
6. How swiftly did the soldiers run? They ran as swiftly as possible.
7. When will the soldiers return? How will they be greeted by the citizens?
8. Of what kind of state are you a citizen?
9. Who is your general? How many soldiers has he? What town has he taken?
10. Which of the consuls* will lead the army?

* Obs. There were two consuls at Rome.

Exercise 7

And so it was that. / *Therefore.*	Itaque.
And . . . no one. / *Nor . . . anyone.*	Nec quisquam.

But how could Romulus rescue his brother? Where was the prison? How many soldiers were guarding him? Romulus did not know nor was there anyone from whom he could enquire. But Remus had been seen by the brother of the king, Numitor, who recognized his grandson. And so, when he learnt about the arrival of Romulus with the shepherds he too collected a band within the city. He joined forces with Romulus and they attacked the king whom they slew. Numitor became king in place of his brother.

Obs. *and . . . not*, neque.
and . . . no, neque ullus.
and . . . no one, nec quisquam.
and . . . nothing, nec quidquam.
and . . . never, neque unquam.
and . . . nowhere, neque usquam.

SIMPLE QUESTIONS—(*Continued*)

Notice now the questions included in Class B. (page 6).

These also are of two kinds:

(a) Those which merely ask for information.

(b) Those which give an indication of the kind of answer *expected*. (It does not matter what answer is actually given.)

Examples.

(a) Will he come? (Simple information asked for).

(b) { Will he not come? (Answer expected 'Yes').
He won't come, will he? (Answer expected 'No').

Rule 4. **Questions indicated by inversion in English are asked in Latin:**
By -ne—when information is asked for.
nonne—when answer 'Yes' is expected.
num—when answer 'No' is expected.

Obs. -ne is enclitic.[1] It is added to the most important word which is usually the first word of the question.

(a) *Will Caesar conquer the Gauls?*
Caesarne Gallos superabit?

(b) *Has not Sulla conquered Marius?* (*Yes*).
Nonne Sulla Marium superavit?

(c) *Romulus did not rule over barbarians, did he?* (*No*).
Num Romulus barbaros regebat?

Caution—Do not use -ne in any sentence already containing an interrogative word.

Exercise 8

To form a plan. }
To adopt a plan. } Consilium capere.

1. Are not consuls elected every year?
2. Have not barbarians always been ruled by Romans?

[1] An enclitic is a particle which must be appended to another word.

3. Surely you will not adopt this plan?
4. How many plans has the senate adopted?
5. Were you asked for your opinion by Cicero?
6. You were not taught letters by a slave, were you?
7. Why did you hide this from your father?
8. Will not Marius be elected consul by the votes of the soldiers?
9. Sulla has already conquered Marius, hasn't he?
10. Are you ready to show yourselves brave men?

Exercise 9

No. (In answer to a question). Minime.

1. Was not Brutus considered an honourable man?
2. Did a friend greet you?
3. He will not remain here, will he?
4. Sulla has not already conquered Marius, has he?
5. Did Cicero ask many men for their opinion in the Senate to-day?
6. Romans were often conquered by Carthaginians, were they not?
7. But did not the Romans win the victory at last?
8. Who leads the army? Do the soldiers consider him a brave man?
9. Surely you will not ask Caesar for money? No.
10. He will leave the city to-morrow, won't he?

Exercise 10

Once upon a time. Olim.

Romulus and Remus who had now learned about their birth, founded a city of their own, near the place where Faustulus had found them. Surely these brothers, who have suffered so much together will always be friends? Will they not always be bound to one another[1] by the memory of the past? No. Soon they quarrelled and Romulus killed the brother whom once he had rescued.

[1] inter se.

SIMPLE COMMANDS

Rule 5. True commands i.e. those addressed to a second person are translated by the Latin imperative—if affirmative.

Hurry, soldiers!
Contendite, milites!

Hear these words, boy!
Audi haec verba, puer!

Rule 6. But if the command addressed to the second person is negative, use the imperative of nolo, I am unwilling, (noli, nolite) with the infinitive.

Do not kill the prisoners, Romans!
Romani, nolite necare captivos.

Do not lie!
Noli mentiri.

Obs. If the command is addressed familiarly to ONE person, ne with the perfect Subjunctive may be used.

Do not hesitate!
Ne dubitaveris!

Rule 7. Use the Present Subjunctive to express a command or exhortation in 1st. Person Plural and 3rd. Person Sing. and Plural. Negative always NE

Let us fight bravely.
Pugnemus fortiter.

Let the master teach the boys letters.
Magister pueros litteras doceat.

Let not the soldiers retreat.
Ne milites se recipiant.

Obs. 1. When a command is double, and the second part is negative use neu or neve instead of neque.

Follow and do not try to lead.
Sequere neu conatus sis praecedere.

Obs. 2. In the plural this example would be,
Sequimini! nolite conari praecedere.

Caution.—Et is not used before noli (nolite).
nolite mihi subtrahere vicarium meae diligentiae, nolite adimere eum rei publicae.

Exercise 11

A man of great dignity. Vir summae gravitatis.

1. Follow me, soldiers! Do not throw away your arms but advance bravely.
2. Listen to the words of your general, a man of the greatest ability.
3. Do not come to-morrow, Marcus, come to-day!
4. Let those who fight be called soldiers.
5. Do not ask us for money for we have given it all to Caesar.
6. Let us not obey unjust commands!
7. Let not bad consuls be elected by your votes, citizens!

8. Let us, citizens, elect a man of great dignity as consul.

9. Do not show yourselves cowards, soldiers, but fight bravely!

10. Let those who teach, learn!

Exercise 12

To lose an opportunity. Occasionem amittere.

1. Do not do or say these things!
2. Let us not lose this opportunity nor let us fight sluggishly!
3. Soldiers, do not throw away your arms and fly!
4. Let those who desire office obey the laws and not prove themselves bad citizens.
5. Let not men who have proved themselves cowards, fight in our army!
6. Teach your children letters, O fathers!
7. Do not whip the boys who have not learnt their letters!
8. If you consider Marius a bad consul, kill him!
9. Return at once, soldiers and do not fly. Not thus did our fathers win victories.
10. Follow the standards. Go where your general leads!

Exercise 13

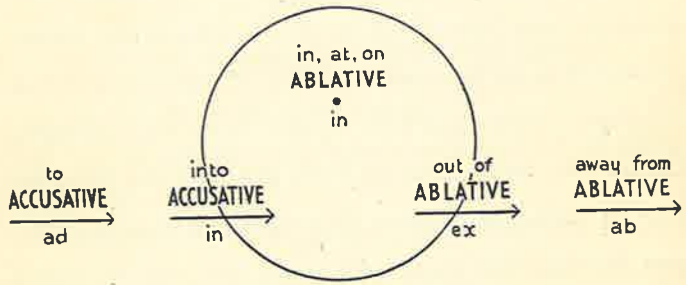
For ever, always. Semper.

So Romulus built a large city but his citizens were few. He therefore sent a message to all ruined and unhappy men who lived in the neighbouring towns. "Come ye to my new city" he said, "There you will find a refuge. There you will be safe from your enemies. Let all who desire freedom, work and fight for freedom. Nor let them fear to show themselves brave men. Will you let slip this opportunity and for ever be called cowards? No! Do not delay, therefore, but set out at once." Very many men, both free-men and slaves fled to the new city. And so Romulus elected one hundred senators who were called 'fathers' and whose families were called 'patrician.'

PLACE

The main relations of Place may be illustrated by the following diagrams:

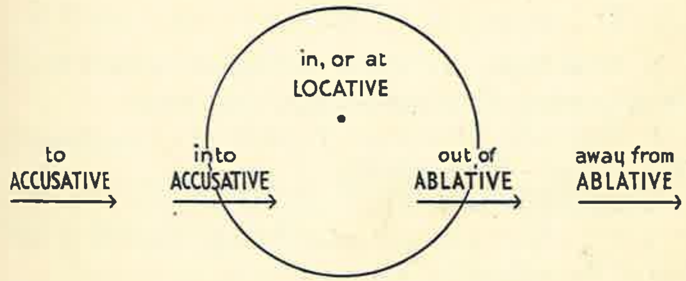
A.



to Italy	ad Italiam	*from Italy*	ab Italia
into Italy	in Italiam	*out of Italy*	ex Italia
	in Italy	in Italia.	
	on the table	in mensa.	

B.

In the case of the *names* of towns, small islands, (i.e. not big enough to be considered a country), domus and rus, omit the preposition in all relations and use the Locative case to express 'in' or 'at.'



The Locative case has the same form as the Genitive in the 1st and 2nd declensions *singular*. Otherwise it has the same form as the Ablative.

at (or *in*) *Rome*	Romae
at (or *in*) *Athens*	Athenis
at home	domi.

N.B. domi meae, *at my house,* domi tuae, *at your house,* etc.

Obs. rus has locative ruri.

Exercise 14

The top of the mountain.	Summus mons.[1]
The middle of the river.	Medium flumen.
The foot of the hill.	Imus collis.

N.B. the two English nouns become adjective and noun in Latin. So also with extremus, last (the last), primus, first (the beginning of), reliquus, remaining (the rest of).

1. From Rome. To Pisae. At Baiae. From Tibur. Into Faesulae. From the country. At home.

2. Into Italy. From Gaul. To Sicily. To Brundisium. At Carthage. In the country.

3. Do you intend to return home to-morrow?

4. The soldier, a man of great courage, climbed to the top of the wall.

5. Yesterday I set out for my farm in Sicily.[2]

6. A message was brought to Hannibal in Italy from his father in Carthage.

7. The rest of the Romans remained in the camp.

8. Will you remain in your house? Will you not set out for Baiae?

9. The Gauls were marching on Rome but were defeated by Marius at Aquae Sextiae.

10. Caesar pitched his camp at the foot of the hill.

---

[1] Mons summus = the highest mountain.

[2] Obs. Latin 'to Sicily to my farm.' When a sentence contains a verb of motion to or from, all place relations are to / into or from / out of.

Exercise 15

The city of Rome.	Urbs Roma.
The island of Sicily.	Sicilia insula.

N.B. In Latin the two nouns are in apposition.

1. From Greece. At Tarentum. At Athens. Into Spain. From Arretium. To the city of Syracuse.

2. From Sicily. To Africa. At Lanuvium. To the city of Rome. In the island of Crete.

3. The enemy are already advancing into the middle of the city.

4. The soldiers stood on the top of the rampart and hurled darts at the enemy.

5. Come to my house to-morrow morning.

6. You, a man of great learning,[1] have never visited the city of Athens.

7. How many soldiers have you transported from Syracuse to Tarentum?

8. The soldier climbed from the bottom of the ditch to the top of the earthwork.

9. I have just returned from Gaul, but to-morrow I shall set out for my country house at Veii.

10. Reluctantly we departed from the beautiful city of Florence.

---

[1] See Ex. 11 phrase.

SPACE

Rule 8. **Extent of Space is expressed in Latin by the Accusative case.**

(a) *He built a wall ten feet high.*
Murum decem pedes altum aedificavit.

(b) *The Roman camp is two miles away.*
Castra Romanorum milia passuum duo absunt.

Obs. 1. Notice in (a) that the Latin idiom is exactly the same as the English.

Obs. 2. Mille, one thousand, is an adjective. Milia, thousands, is a noun, and is followed by a dependent genitive. *A thousand cavalry*—Mille equites. *Two thousand cavalry*—Duo milia equitum.

TIME

Consider the English:—
(a) Ulysses wandered *for ten years.*
(b) Ulysses returned home *in the eleventh year.*
within eleven years.

In (a) the phrase "for ten years" expresses a *continuous period* of time, in (b) "in the eleventh year" / "within eleven years" express a *point* in time.

(a) Ulixes annos decem errabat.
(b) Ulixes anno undecimo / annis undecim domum rediit.

Rule 9. **A continuous period of time is expressed in Latin by the Accusative Case, a point in time is expressed by the Ablative Case. (No preposition.)**

Obs. 1. The phrase expressing Time must be considered in close connection with the main verb in the sentence.
(1) He came to my house during the night.
(2) He slept during the night.

In (1) the meaning and tense of the verb fix the action at a point in time and the time-phrase is translated by the Ablative.

In (2) the meaning and tense of the verb indicate a continuous period of time and the time-phrase is translated by the Accusative.

Obs. 2. The preposition 'per' is sometimes used in expressing a continuous period of time.
Ludi per decem dies facti sunt.
Games were performed for ten days.

Exercise 16

About the same time. Eodem fere tempore.

1. A river two feet deep. Three thousand infantry. In the ninth year.
2. We arrived home at the third hour.
3. About the same time the Romans were defeated at Cannae.
4. We travelled all night.
5. He remained in Athens for seven years.
6. He did not return to Rome for six months.
7. Send a thousand cavalry to me at Veii.
8. I shall be at home to-morrow.
9. Gaius will be at your house.
10. We reached Tarentum by night.

Exercise 16a

To be at war with. Bellum gerere cum (abl.)

1. All day. In the night. For many years. A wall six feet high.

2. We left Rome in the night and travelled to Florence.

3. Nero marched all day and all night.

4. I shall return home at the ninth hour.

5. I once remained for six months in Sicily.

6. He arrived at my country house in Faesulae during the night.

7. The wall was made thirteen feet high, four hundred and five feet long and three feet broad.

8. I shall remain for a few days at my country house in Faesulae.

9. For fifty years the Romans were at war with the Carthaginians.

10. What general will wage war with his own countrymen?

Exercise 17

Thirteen years old. Tredecim annos natus.
The month of March. Mensis Martius (adj.)

1. A ship fifty-one feet long. All day long. At night. In the month of March.

2. How often did an enemy approach the gates of Rome?

3. Caesar sent seven messengers from the camp into the nearest city.

4. Caesar built a bridge over the Rhone seven hundred and fifty-two feet long.

5. At the age of twenty he came to Rome.

6. I saw your brother at my house to-day.

7. I shall return to Rome immediately from Tarentum, a town which I have never liked.

8. Roman ships were only seventy feet long.

9. The general, a man of great cruelty, was killed in the middle of the camp.

10. For five days we waited in the town of Saguntum but no news came of Caesar's victory.

PLACE, SPACE AND TIME

Rule 10. An adjective cannot qualify the name of a town.

The Latin idiom will be sufficiently clear from the following examples.

I was born in the pleasant city of Corinth.
Corinthi (loc.), in urbe amoena, natus sum.
Caesar will depart from the well-fortified town of Ariminum.
Caesar Arimino, ex oppido munitissimo, discedet.
We shall go to the populous city of Athens.
Athenas, ad urbem celeberrimam, ibimus.

Obs. But with the adjectives medius, totus and a few others a local ablative may be used, e.g.
In the whole of Florence.
Tota Florentia.

Rule 11. Measure of difference both in Space and Time is expressed by the Ablative.

Thus: A. *Rome is 14 miles from Veii.*
Roma Veiis milibus passuum quattuordecim abest.

B.

Ten years after	decem post annis.
Three months before	tribus ante mensibus.
Seven years older	annis septem maior.
Four months longer	mensibus quattuor diutius.

Obs. 1. In A. the Accusative of Extent of Space (Rule 8.) may also be used.

Obs. 2. In B. post and ante are adverbs.

Obs. 3. *Six months ago.*
Abhinc sex menses or abhinc sex mensibus.

Exercise 18

Much later.	Multo post.
A little before.	Paulo ante.
On the day before.	Pridie.
On the day after.	Postridie.
A march of two (three) days.	Iter bidui (tridui).

1. Three years afterwards we left Rome and went to Corioli.
2. Three thousand cavalry pitched their camp a thousand paces from the enemy.
3. We lived in the beautiful city of Corinth for ten months.
4. The camp of Ariovistus was two days' march distant from Caesar's camp.
5. The ships had returned to Tarentum two days before.
6. Marius was a few days' march away.
7. A little later I reached Baiae but I was three miles away from my farm.
8. Next day we reached the place where the battle was fought.
9. He was ten years older than his brother.
10. We stayed in Rome six months longer than you remained in the country.

Exercise 19

Up stream.	Adverso flumine.
Down stream.	Secundo flumine.

1. The temple of Aesculapius is five miles distant from the town of Epidaurus.
2. The tower is ten feet higher than the wall.
3. Nero had completed a six days' march and had defeated Hasdrubal.
4. Six months ago I departed from my home at Tibur and set out for Gaul.
5. The rest of the soldiers mounted to the top of the tower and, a little while afterwards, dislodged the enemy.
6. For many days we marched on a good road but at last we found boats and rowed down stream.
7. Many days afterwards we saw the enemy.
8. All my life I have dwelt in the fair city of Corinth.
9. Ambassadors came to Caesar in his camp which was six miles distant from Gergovia.
10. We had reached Rome many days before.

Exercise 20

Hold a festival. Ludos facere.

In a short time there were many new citizens in Rome, but the women were few, nor were the neighbouring peoples willing to give their daughters to such men as the Romans. Romulus therefore adopted this plan. On a certain day in the month of August he held a festival to which he invited the inhabitants of the neighbouring cities. Men with their wives and daughters came from Caenina, from Crustumerium and from Antemnae, all eager to see the games[1] which Romulus was about to celebrate. But soon Romulus gave a signal to his young men; whereupon they rushed upon the maidens and carried them off to their homes.

[1] videndi ludos.

Exercise 21

To assemble (before). Convenire ad.

The parents of the maidens were very angry and roused all the neighbouring states. First they assembled before Titus Tatius, king of the Sabines, because the reputation of Tatius was greatest in those parts. When however he seemed somewhat inactive,[1] the people of Caenina by themselves[2] made an attack on Roman territory; thereupon Romulus marched out with his army and easily defeated them. Moreover the Romans did not immediately return to the city but marched to Caenina and took the town at the first assault. When after a few days he returned to Rome Romulus dedicated a temple on the Capitol to Iuppiter. This was the first temple consecrated at Rome.

[1] Use comparative. [2] ipsi.

TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

The Impersonal Passive

Note: The distinction between the Transitive and Intransitive Verb is especially important for the writer of Latin Prose.

Rule 12. **Many transitive verbs in English are translated into Latin by verbs which govern a Dative (only). Such verbs are Intransitive.**

The following list will make this clear.

Verb.	*Meaning.*	*Usual English Translation*
placere	to be pleasing (to)	to please.
ignoscere	to give forgiveness (to)	to forgive.
parere	to be obedient (to)	to obey.
imperare	to give orders (to)	to order.
parcere	to be merciful (to)	to spare.
nocere	to be harmful (to)	to harm.

Catiline harmed the state.
Catilina rei publicae nocuit.

Rule 13. **The only Passive form of these verbs (as of all Intransitives) is the 3rd person sing. used Impersonally.**

Thus:

He will be forgiven: ei ignoscetur (*there will be given forgiveness to him.*)

You are obeyed: tibi paretur (*there is given obedience to you.*)

Obs. 1. Before using any verb in Latin Prose decide whether it is Transitive or Intransitive.

Obs. 2. The use of the Impersonal construction is characteristic of Latin. An Impersonal phrase will often be the equivalent of a noun with a transitive verb in English.

A fierce battle was fought. (pugno intrans.)	Atrociter est pugnatum.
A shout is raised. (clamo intrans.)	Conclamatur.

(A moment's thought will show why the English adjective 'fierce' becomes an adverb 'atrociter' in Latin.)

Exercise 22

To intend. In animo habere (followed by Infinitive).

1. Why do you favour the enemies of your country?
2. Do not envy those who are injuring the state.
3. Caesar spared the captives whom the cavalry intended to harm.
4. Shall traitors be forgiven?
5. The consul was not favourable to the plans of the tribunes.
6. We shall not be persuaded by you.
7. I served a bad master for many years; but Balbus, whom now I serve, is kind to me.
8. The Romans became great because they obeyed good laws willingly.
9. How many leaders do we trust?
10. Caesar was trusted by all his soldiers.

Exercise 23

News has come. Nuntiatum est.

1. Orders are given to the citizens by the magistrates.
2. News has come concerning the return of Caesar.
3. How many men have been pardoned by Sulla?
4. This excellent reply was given by the magistrates to the ambassadors.
5. Men rushed together from all parts of the camp to the general's tent.
6. A fierce battle was fought at Asculum.
7. A sudden cry arose among the soldiers because the leader intended to spare the citizens.
8. You were not persuaded by the words of the consul.
9. Caesar was considered a good general but the magistrates did not trust him.
10. How long did the battle last yesterday?

Exercise 24

To suffer a disaster.	Cladem accipere.
To condemn to death.	Capitis damnare.
At the beginning of spring.	Initio veris.

These enemies had been quickly conquered but the war which, some months afterwards, was waged with

the Sabines, was far more serious. At the beginning of the war the Romans suffered a severe disaster. Sp. Tarpeius was in command of the citadel. But his daughter, who had been bribed with gold, showed the Sabines the way into the citadel and it was captured. The girl, however, was not spared by Tatius who condemned her to death. "No one" said he[1] "trusts a traitor."

Exercise 25

Skilled in war. Peritus-a-um belli.

On the next day a fierce battle was fought on the plain between the Palatine and Capitoline hills. The Romans had great confidence in their general Hostilius who was skilled in war. But when he was killed a panic arose, and the Romans retreated in confusion. Romulus when he perceived this, vowed a temple to Iuppiter. Thereupon a shout was raised and from all sides men rallied to the king. But when the Romans were thus renewing the battle, the captured girls, now Roman matrons, ran between the fighters.[2] "Surely" they say[3] "there has already been too much fighting. As for us[4] we prefer to die than to be the cause of death to fathers, brothers and husbands." Thereupon the battle was stopped[5] and the Romans and the Sabines made peace.

[1] See page 39. [2] pugnantes. [3] See page 39.
[4] nos quidem. [5] Say, they desisted from the battle.

THE INFINITIVE AS NOUN

Consider the English.

(a) *To work is to pray.*
(b) *I was teaching boys to write.*

Here it will be noticed that the Infinitives 'to work,' 'to pray,' and 'to write' are used as nouns.

Rule. 14. The Infinitive, as naming the action or state indicated by the verb, is used as a noun, but only as the subject, complement or object.

(a) Laborare est orare.
(b) Pueros scribere docebam.

Obs. 1. But since the Infinitive is also a verb it may have an object of its own (whether direct or indirect) and the infinitive will be qualified by an adverb as in English—not by an adjective.

(a) *It is expedient to obey the laws.*
Parere legibus est utile.

(b) *It is difficult to teach well.*
Bene docere est difficile.

Obs. 2. The Latin Infinitive is often used to translate English abstract nouns. e.g.

falsehood	mentiri	*delay*	morari.
inaction	nihil agere	*happiness*	beate vivere.

Consider the English verbs:

I wish	I used.
I can	I ought.
I will (i.e. determine)	I would rather.

All these verbs require an infinitive to complete their meaning. There is a large number of such verbs in Latin.

Important examples are found in vocabs. 26 and 27.

Rule 15. Verbs denoting desire, determination, ability, obligation, striving, require an Infinitive to complete their meaning.

Obs. The auxiliary force of these verbs should be noted.

Exercise 26

To influence the mind.	Animum movere.
It is the duty of (part of, character of, etc.) a good consul.	Est boni consulis.

1. Seeing is believing.
2. Soldiers can fight bravely when they trust in their leader.
3. Caesar determined to fortify a camp on the bank of the river.
4. Those who wish to choose Cicero as consul ought to assemble in the Campus Martius.
5. I wanted to go to Baiae but I was compelled against my will[1] to remain in Rome.
6. For six days we tried to advance but on the seventh we retreated.
7. They did not dare to leave the city.
8. It is the duty of a good leader to try to spare his soldiers.
9. Whom do you wish to pardon? A general ought never to allow pity to influence his mind.
10. Those who do not wish to help their friends will not be loved.

[1] Say, I, unwillingly, was compelled.

Exercise 27

To give battle to the enemy.	Proelium cum hostibus committere
Elders.	Maiores natu.

1. It is not the part of a prudent consul to hasten to lead his troops against the enemy.
2. If soldiers are unwilling to obey their leader, they are punished.
3. We have been compelled to surrender but our lives were spared by the enemy.
4. We have decided not to defend the city but to hasten to give battle to the enemy.
5. A slave taught me to read and write.
6. We were not allowed to go to Corinth, so we remained in Italy.
7. Do not try to injure those who are willing to help you.
8. Let us not desire to teach our elders.
9. Catiline would rather set fire to Rome than be compelled to leave the city.
10. Pardon those who are willing to give battle to the Remi.

Exercise 28

A little learning. Parum didicisse.

1. At this moment inactivity is disgraceful.
2. Falsehood is never praiseworthy.
3. Happiness is not the same as prosperity.
4. Obedience is sometimes wrong.
5. Delays are dangerous.
6. Self-praise is no recommendation.
7. Self-satisfaction is often self-praise.
8. Idleness never pleases energetic men.
9. A little learning is a dangerous thing
10. Knowledge is power.

THE NOMINATIVE AND INFINITIVE

We have seen (Rule 1.) that 'Cicero' and 'consul' are in the same case in such sentences as

(a) *Cicero is consul.*
Cicero est consul.
(b) *Cicero is elected consul.*
Cicero creatur consul.

Now consider the English:

(c) *Cicero wishes to be consul.*
(d) *Cicero ought to be elected consul.*

As in (a) and (b) 'is' and 'is elected' are links joining 'Cicero' and 'consul' so 'wishes to be' 'ought to be elected' are longer links. But 'Cicero' and 'consul' still mean the same person and are in the same case.

Thus:

(c) Cicero esse vult consul.
(d) Cicero debet creari consul.

Rule 16. **When one of the verbs of Rule 15 is followed by a 'link' verb (see Rule 1.) the complement of the link verb is in the Nominative Case.**

Obs. Passive verbs of 'saying' and 'thinking' are NOT used impersonally in Latin.

Ex. *It is said that Cicero was a good consul.*
becomes *Cicero is said to have been a good consul.*
Cicero dicitur fuisse bonus consul.

It seems that the leader is wise.
becomes *The leader seems to be wise.*
Dux videtur esse prudens.

Note. 1. Videtur is used impersonally when it means 'it seems good.'

Note 2. Nuntiatum est—*it was reported,* is good Latin.

Note 3. A Latin epithet is always in the same case as the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

Exercise 29

At home and in the field. Domi militiaeque.

1. Do you desire to spare the captives?
2. Why did they not dare approach the city?
3. When was the battle of Asculum fought? Who ought to be called the victor?
4. Can you not elect Marius consul by your votes?
5. It is the duty of all good leaders to try to spare their men.
6. Citizens, do not permit these men to remain in the city.
7. Soldiers cannot venture to be considered cowards.
8. The general will decide to fight at once.
9. Surely these citizens do not seem to you to be cowards?
10. At home he was called a wise consul, in the field a reckless commander.

Exercise 30

Against my (your, his) will. Invitus-a-um.

1. Learn to be patient and do not desire to seem reckless.

2. If you do not wish to be thought cowards, fight bravely.

3. It seems that Cicero has always been considered a good orator.

4. Why do you not dare to approach the city?

5. How wide ought this wall to be made?

6. Men who are not accustomed to fight ought not to be sent against this enemy.

7. Who compelled you against your will, to leave the country and go to the city?

8. By how many citizens was he considered a good consul?

9. Working is not less pleasing than speaking.

10. It seems that you were accustomed to show yourself a coward.

Exercise 31

To tell a wonderful story. Mirabilia dicere.

When Romulus had reigned for many years and was now becoming an old man it is said that the following miracle occurred.

He had determined to review his army in the Campus Martius and, of course, all the Roman citizens desired to see the show. But when Romulus had taken his seat upon the throne, a black cloud suddenly hid him from his people. On all sides there was terror and panic, nor did men cease to fear when, after the day grew clear again, it was seen that the King's seat was empty. But certain senators who were standing near told a wonderful story. "The King" they said[1] "has been carried up to Heaven by the storm." Thereupon it was believed that Romulus the king and father of the city of Rome had become a god.

Obs. This verb is used when the actual words of the speaker are quoted. It never precedes the quotation but *is always parenthetic.*

"Desilite," inquit, "commilitones."

The lacking forms of inquam may be supplied by forms of dicere.

Indicative—

Pres. inquam, inquis, inquit, inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.
Future — inquies, inquiet.
Imperf. — — inquiebat.
Perfect: inquii, inquisti, inquit.
Imperative: inque, inquito.

[1] Use 'inquiunt.'

TENSES OF INFINITIVE MOOD

Transitive Verb

	Active	*Passive*
Present	capere	capi
Future	capturus -a -um esse	*captum iri
Perfect	cepisse	captus -a -um esse

*Obs. For explanation of the form captum iri see page 94.

Intransitive

	Active	*Passive*
Present	ignoscere	——
Future	ignoturus -a -um esse	——
Perfect	ignovisse	——

Deponent

Present	loqui
Future	locuturus -a -um esse
Perfect	locutus -a -um esse

PARTICIPLES

Transitive Verb

	Active	*Passive*
Present	capiens, capientis	——
Future	capturus -a -um	——
Perfect	——	captus -a -um

Intransitive Verb

	Active	*Passive*
Present	ignoscens, -entis	——
Future	ignoturus -a -um	——
Perfect	——	——

Deponent

Present	loquens, -entis
Future	locuturus -a -um
Perfect	locutus -a -um

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE

Consider the English: *He thinks that Cicero was a good consul.*
Latin: Putat Ciceronem fuisse bonum consulem.

Notice (1) There is no word for 'that' in the Latin.
(2) Cicero—subject of the 'that-clause'—is accusative in Latin.
(3) The verb in the 'that-clause' is in the Infinitive in Latin.

Rule 17. After active verbs of 'saying' and 'thinking' the subject of the dependent noun clause is in the Accusative and its verb is in the Infinitive.

He said that a bridge had been made across the Rhine.
Pontem esse factum in Rheno dixit.

They understood that the enemy were about to make an attack.

Hostes esse impetum facturos intellexerunt.

Obs. 1. Remember that in the passive the Nominative and Infinitive is used. (See rule 16.)

It is said that the Gauls have crossed the Rhine.
Galli dicuntur transivisse Rhenum.

Obs. 2. The English verb 'say' when combined with not, never, no one, is Latin nego, nego unquam, nego quemquam.

They say that the Gauls have not crossed the Rhine.
Negant Gallos transivisse Rhenum.
They say that no one will ever climb this mountain.
Negant quemquam hunc montem unquam ascensurum esse.

Exercise 32

To make a bridge over a river.	Pontem in flumine facere.
To make an attack upon the enemy.	Impetum in hostes facere.

1. Hannibal said that the Romans could never be conquered.
2. Caesar announced that he would build a bridge over the Rhine.
3. No one can say that the Gauls are not brave.
4. Who dares to announce that the Romans have been defeated?
5. Caesar believed that the Helvetii would turn away from the river.
6. The soldiers said that no one could row up stream.
7. It was generally[1] considered that the Gauls would make an attack upon us.
8. Did Marius say that Saturninus was not a traitor?
9. Do not think that many men will come to the assistance of the state.
10. Crassus believed that Caesar would not be made king.

---

[1] Ab plerisque.

Exercise 33

Supreme command.	Summa imperii.
He saw affairs were in a critical condition.	Rem esse in angusto vidit.

1. They said that the Gauls had never defeated Caesar.

2. The Romans believed that Marius could never be conquered.

3. The messengers reported that the supreme command had been entrusted to Ariovistus.

4. It is said that the Romans believed that affairs were in a critical condition.

5. Report to Caesar that the Helvetii are about to cross the river.

6. The scouts reported that the Helvetii were crossing the Rhone.

7. Caesar said that the army would set out in the third watch.

8. The Romans believed that that place was sacred.

9. Cicero told the senators that affairs had never been in so critical a condition.

10. To whom will they entrust the supreme command?

Exercise 34

To inform Caesar.	Caesarem certiorem facere.
Caesar was informed.	Caesar certior factus est.
The world.	Orbis terrarum.
Deeds.	Res gestae.

The Romans never saw their king again. But next day a young man came to Rome who told a marvellous story.

He said that Romulus had appeared to him. He ordered him to inform the Romans that their king wished them to obey the laws, to become good soldiers (and) to make Rome the capital of the world. When the Romans were told this, they knew that Romulus still loved his people and they determined to carry out his commands.

For nearly one thousand years the deeds of the Romans[1] won glory for the Roman name, though, towards the end of this period, many vices began to sap their strength.

[1] Say, the Romans, by their deeds, etc.

TENSES OF INFINITIVE VERBS OF HOPING, ETC.

Consider the English: *He said that Caesar lived in Rome.*
The English 'lived' conceals a difficulty.

It may mean (1) That Caesar *is living* in Rome. Or
(2) That Caesar *was living* in Rome at some time previous to the speaker's statement.

For (1) Use present infinitive. Dixit Caesarem Romae habitare.
(2) Use perfect infinitive. Dixit Caesarem Romae habitavisse.

The tense of the infin. in reported speech is:—
Present, if the time of the actions of main verb and infin. are the same.
Perfect, if the time of infin. is previous to that of main verb.
Future, if action of infin. has not yet taken place at time of speaking.

Rule 18. **Verbs of hoping, promising and threatening are followed by the Accusative and Future Infinitive in Latin.**

He hopes that the Gauls will attack Rome.
Gallos Romam oppugnaturos esse sperat.

Obs. 1. If there is no noun after the verb of hoping etc. use a pronoun of the same person as the subject.
You promise to come to Rome.
Promittis te Romam esse venturum.
We threaten to kill Caesar.
Minamur nos Caesarem interfecturos esse.

The subject of the infinitive should always be expressed.

Obs. 2. The pronoun 'se' (in all its cases) and the possessive adjective 'suus-a-um' are used to refer to a sing. or plur. subject, in the 3rd person, of the verb of 'saying,' 'thinking,' 'hoping,' etc.
They hope to come to Rome.
Se Romam venturos esse sperant.

But
We think that they will come.
Eos esse venturos putamus.

Exercise 35

To threaten someone with death. Mortem alicui minari.

1. Caesar's lieutenant promised to pardon the prisoners.
2. They say that the Romans conquered many foes but that they themselves were conquered at last.
3. The citizens considered Marius a good general but a bad consul.
4. Surely you do not hope to be elected praetor?
5. The soldiers threatened to kill the Gauls but Caesar spared them.
6. Where do you think Caesar has gone?
7. Show your courage soldiers, and do not think that barbarians can conquer Romans.
8. You say that you will not retreat. Say rather that no one will cease to advance.
9. Why do men say that Caesar was a great general?
10. Let none of the soldiers think that their leader is a coward.

Exercise 36

To show (their) backs (to the enemy). Terga dare.

1. Surely the man whom all consider brave will not show his back to the enemy.
2. We hope to go to Athens next winter.
3. Did Caesar promise to give land and money to his soldiers?
4. Learn to write well and do not think that good writing is a trivial matter.
5. Men say that there was a panic in the camp.
6. You hope to come soon, don't you?
7. He promised to come to Rome on the ninth day, but it is not reported that he has set out.
8. Do you believe that Romans will be worsted by Gauls?
9. Surely you do not think that Marius will be made consul again?
10. He promised that all the soldiers should be given money and lands.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

Consider the English:

We have come here for the purpose of fighting.
The leader is desirous of advancing.
She devotes herself to singing.
By obeying we learn to rule others.

The words 'fighting,' 'advancing,' 'singing,' 'obeying' are nouns, since they name something (i.e. the *action* of the verb).

Corresponding to this English noun in -ing there is the Latin Gerund, a neuter noun of the second decl.—only used in the singular and in the Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Ablative cases.

Thus the Latin:

Huc ad pugnandum (or pugnandi causa) venimus.
Dux progrediendi est cupidus.
Canendo studet.
Parendo regere alios discimus.

Here 'ad pugnandum' means	*'for the purpose of fighting.'*
'pugnandi causa'[1]	*'for the sake of fighting.'*
'canendo'	*'to singing.'*
'parendo'	*'by obeying.'*

Rule 19. **The Gerund of Intransitive Verbs in Latin is used in a similar way to the English Gerund, except that it is never used as subject, object, or complement. As subject, object, or complement, Latin uses the Infinitive (see Rule 14).**

But a moment's reflection shows that the English noun in -ing has verb—as well as noun—function. Thus we say:

For the purpose of learning *letters.*
By obeying *the laws.*

[1] Causa and gratia—'for the sake of' come after the genitive.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES—(*Continued*)

Rule 20. **In Latin the Gerund may govern a case but it is NOT generally used with verbs which govern an accusative. (i.e. its use is practically confined to Intransitive Verbs.)**

e.g. ***By obeying the laws we learn to rule others.***
Parendo legibus regere alios discimus.
He is desirous of sparing the women.
Cupidus est parcendi feminis.

Rule 21. **When the Latin Gerund would govern an Accusative, the Gerundive construction is generally used.**

Obs. The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective and is thus only found with Transitive Verbs. Its use is clearly shown in the following examples.

Consider the English:

He is paying attention to seeking peace.

To turn this by the Gerundive construction;

(1) Put 'peace' in the same case as 'seeking' i.e. the Dative, paci.

(2) Make Gerundive (an adj. in -ndus, -a, um) agree with 'paci.'

Thus: Paci petendae operam dat.

Similarly.	*Of waging war*	becomes	belli gerendi.
	Of violating the law	„	legis violandae.
	By reading letters	„	litteris legendis.

This may be summed up in grammatical language thus: The Gerundive attracts the object into its own case but agrees with it in Gender and Number.

But

Caution. If the use of the Gerundive would cause two Genitive plurals to come together the Gerund is preferred.

Thus; *For the sake of waging wars.*
is bella gerendi causa.

The gerund may govern a noun or pronoun in the accusative case if the gerund itself is in the genitive case or in the ablative without a preposition.

Exercise 37

1. The signal for marching.*
2. For the purpose of fighting.
3. For the purpose of waging war.
4. For the sake of electing consuls.
5. By consulting your interests.
6. By destroying the temples.
7. An opportunity of joining battle.
8. By delay.
9. The signal to advance.
10. The desire to teach.
11. Hope of capturing the city.
12. To pay attention to fighting.
13. By prayer and work.
14. In making these preparations.
15. For the purpose of seeking peace.
16. For the sake of pleasing me.
17. To pursue the enemy.
18. By dying.
19. By consulting his own interests.

*Obs. A noun, or gerund, depending on another noun, is in the *genitive* case.

Exercise 38

To hold an assembly. Comitia habere.

1. Caesar collected wood for the purpose of making a bridge.
2. Caesar sent a soldier to summon the centurion.

3. By consulting the interests of the state a king makes his people loyal.
4. Caesar sent his staff officers to collect the Gallic cavalry.
5. An assembly was held for the purpose of electing consuls.
6. By obedience we learn command.
7. Cicero did this for the purpose of defending himself against his enemies.
8. Then Fabius gave the signal for the march.
9. It is said that the Romans became powerful by conquering themselves.
10. This he did for the purpose of deceiving the Carthaginians.

Exercise 39

To seize the opportunity. Occasionem capere.

After this six kings in turn held power in Rome during a period of two hundred and five years. Some by consulting the interests of the people won a reputation for justice and wisdom.[1] One, for the sake of self-satisfaction, oppressed the people by imposing harsh laws and by exacting large taxes. Last of these kings was Tarquinius the Proud, a man whom the Romans learned to hate. But at last the Romans formed a plan for the purpose of expelling him from the country, and when they had seized the opportunity of carrying this out, Rome became free.

[1] Use genitive.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

Consider the English:

(1) *Under your leadership we captured the town.*

(2) *He did this against my will.*

(3) *The plan was formed at your suggestion.*

Obs. In each of these the part underlined is a complete sentence. The phrases 'under your leadership,' 'against my will,' 'at your suggestion,' contain reference to circumstances which accompany (which are attendant upon) the main statement.

Such phrases are frequently used in Latin in a construction known as the Ablative Absolute. It is also called the Ablative of Attendant Circumstances.

Thus:

Under your leadership	becomes	'with you leader'
against my will	"	'with me unwilling'
at your suggestion	"	'with you as proposer.'

(1) Te duce oppidum cepimus.
(2) Me invito hoc fecit.
(3) Te auctore consilium captum est.

Exercise 40

A man of great wisdom. Vir magnae sapientiae.

1. In the consulship of Cicero, a man of great prudence, Catiline was killed.
2. At your suggestion we supported Murena.
3. Despite my reluctance the consuls decided to hold a levy as quickly as possible.
4. With Caesar for our leader we shall defeat the Gauls.
5. During my father's lifetime (say, with my father alive) we lived at Rome.

6. With Cicero as his advocate Murena will not be condemned to death.
7. Under the leadership of Crassus the Romans sustained a severe defeat.
8. When Romulus was king (say, with Romulus king) the Romans were prosperous.
9. Under the banner of this general (say, as leader) the Romans fought bravely.
10. In the consulship of Pompeius and Crassus Caesar conquered the Gauls.

Exercise 41

To declare war on. Bellum indicere (dat.).
To disturb the state. Rem publicam turbare.

1. At the suggestion of Crassus, a man of the greatest ability, we supported the cause of Caesar.
2. Against my will they declared war on the Remi.
3. While Augustus is safe the state will be prosperous.
4. Never surrender at the suggestion of the enemy.
5. While the army is safe Rome will never be besieged.
6. In the dictatorship of Sulla many citizens were deprived of their fortunes.
7. When Iugurtha was king, the Romans waged war in Africa.
8. With Cicero to help me I shall be acquitted by the votes of all the judges.
9. If the judges are honourable the laws will be obeyed.
10. In the consulship of Marius, Saturninus caused a political disturbance.

PARTICIPLES

The Participle is a verbal adjective. (For tenses see page 41.)

Present Participle

Consider the English:

(1) *Weeping he threw himself at the king's feet.*
(2) *He said these things as he was dying.*

In these sentences the actions of 'weeping' and 'throwing' of 'dying' and 'saying' *take place at the same time.* They can, then, be translated by a Latin Present Participle.

(1) Lacrimans ad pedes regis se proiecit.
(2) Moriens haec dixit.

Rule 22. The present participle is used very sparingly in Latin. It is only admissible when the actions indicated by the Participle and by the main verb take place at exactly the same time.

Further Examples:

Catiline fell fighting.
Catilina pugnans cecidit.

He killed the sleeping Balbus.
Balbum dormientem interfecit.

He met Caesar returning from Gaul.
Caesari a Gallia revertenti obviam ivit.

But consider the English:

(1) Hearing this he ordered the soldiers to advance.
(2) Seeing the enemy he retreated.

Here in (1) the 'ordering' takes place after the 'hearing.'
(2) the 'retreating' is a result of the 'seeing' and so the Latin Present Participle cannot be used in either sentence.

Rule 23. The Present Participle may be used in the Ablative Absolute when the time of its action is the same as that of the main verb.

e.g. ***While Romulus was reigning (was king) Romans were prosperous.***
Romulo regnante Romani erant felices.

While Sulla was exhorting his soldiers, Marius was drawing up his line.
Hortante milites Sulla, Marius aciem instruebat.

While the enemy were awaiting the signal, we shouted.
Hostibus signum exspectantibus, clamavimus.

The Future Participle

The Future Participle is chiefly used:

(1) To form the Future Infinitive.
(2) To form a compound future tense.

Notice carefully

He said that he would never write these words.
Haec se unquam scripturum esse negavit.

I was going to write.
Scripturus eram.

Sometimes the Future Participle is used as a true Participle.
Being about to die (on the point of death) he said these things.
Moriturus haec dixit.

Obs. The present and future Participles though active in form are found in deponent verbs. Also the Future Infinitive of deponents is in the active form; profecturus esse, secuturus esse. (See pages 40, 41.)

Exercise 42

To go to meet. Obviam ire. (Dat.).

1. He made an attack upon the advancing Gauls.
2. Many men went out to meet him (as he was) returning from the province.
3. As night was coming on we decided to pitch a camp.
4. With Caesar as leader, can we fear the Gauls?
5. (While) exhorting his men he was struck by an arrow.
6. He died in his sleep.
7. At the approach of spring we left our winter quarters.
8. Caesar spared the Gauls (who were) seeking pardon.
9. We saw the enemy advancing slowly across the plain.
10. To all (who were) asking questions he gave the same reply.

Exercise 43

A mortal wound. Mortiferum vulnus.

Note. A participle is frequently used, in the plural, to denote a class of persons. The usage is confined to the oblique cases.
The cries of the bystanders. Clamores adstantium.
No pronoun must be used with these participles denoting a class.

1. We (who are) about to die salute you.
2. You promised that you would speedily return.
3. When Cicero was consul Catiline hoped to destroy the state.
4. Stretching out their hands the women begged for peace.

5. At your suggestion we decided to set fire to the town.

[redacted]. He said that no one could be spared against the will of Caesar.

[redacted] Though expecting an attack the soldiers were not frightened.

8. The shouts of the passers-by gave hope to the consul.
9. Fighting with Caesar's army, he received a mortal wound.
10. In the consulship of M. Cicero and C. Antonius Catiline attempted to burn the city.

Exercise 44

To pile the baggage. Sarcinas congerere.

1. Shall we obey men who say such things?
2. The shouts of the by-standers alarmed the consul.
3. He spared those who sought pardon.
4. We broke through the crowd of those who stood in our way.
5. Triumphant shouts (i.e. the shouts of those triumphing) announced that the city was captured.
6. The passers-by hailed Cicero as saviour of his country.
7. The enemy made an attack on our men while they were piling the baggage.
8. While Caesar was exhorting his men the Gauls rushed from the wood.
9. Caesar promised pardon to those who obeyed his commands.
10. Cries of sorrow[1] announced the death of Caesar.

[1] Say, of those mourning.

THE DEPONENT PARTICIPLE

Consider the English:

(a) *Having set out at daybreak we hastened to Baiae.*
(b) *Having exhorted his soldiers he gave the signal for battle.*
(c) *Having delayed too long in Rome we lost the opportunity of seeing Caesar.*

These English Past Participles have equivalents in Latin.

(a) Prima luce *profecti* Baias contendimus.
(b) *Hortatus* suos committendi signum proelii dedit.
(c) *Morati* Romae diutius facultatem Caesaris videndi amisimus.

It will be noticed however that these participles all belong to DEPONENT VERBS.

Rule 24. **The only Past Participles with Active meaning in Latin are the Past Participles of Deponent Verbs.**

Obs. 1. Past Participles of Deponent Verbs are also used in the Ablative Absolute construction.

e.g. *The wall having fallen in ruins the Gauls rush out of the city.*
Muro collapso Galli ex urbe ruunt.

Pompeius being now dead Caesar remained in Egypt.
Pompeio iam mortuo Caesar in Aegypto mansit.

Obs. 2. The Perfect Participle of a Deponent Verb often translates an English Present Participle when (1) the action of the English Participle does not take place at the same time as that of the main verb (2) when some other idea than that of time (cause, condition, etc.) is introduced. e.g.

Fearing the Gauls he fled.
Veritus Gallos fugit.

LIST OF COMMON DEPONENT VERBS

		1st Conjugation	
arbitror	arbitrari	arbitratus sum	to think
cunctor	cunctari	cunctatus sum	to delay
vagor	vagari	vagatus sum	to wander.
		2nd Conjugation	
fateor	fateri	fassus sum	to confess
confiteor	confiteri	confessus sum	to confess
mereor	mereri	meritus sum	to deserve
polliceor	polliceri	pollicitus sum	to promise
reor	reri	ratus sum	to think
vereor	vereri	veritus sum	to fear
		3rd Conjugation	
adipiscor	adipisci	adeptus sum	to obtain
fungor	fungi	functus sum (c. abl.)	to perform
fruor	frui	fructus sum (c. abl.)	to enjoy
gradior	gradi	gressus sum	to step
*aggredior	aggredi	aggressus sum	to attack
loquor	loqui	locutus sum	to speak
morior	mori	mortuus sum	to die
nitor	niti	nisus (nixus) sum (c. abl.)	to support one's self on
obliviscor	oblivisci	oblitus sum (c. gen.)	to forget
patior	pati	passus sum	to suffer
proficiscor	proficisci	profectus sum	to set out
queror	queri	questus sum	to complain
sequor	sequi	secutus sum	to follow
utor	uti	usus sum (c. abl.)	to use
		4th Conjugation	
orior	oriri	ortus sum	to arise
potior	potiri	potitus sum (abl.)	get possession of

* Thus—congredior, egredior, ingredior, regredior.

Exercise 45

A desperado.	Perditus homo.
Caesar had every reason to suppose.	Omnibus de causis Caesar existimavit.

1. Having set out from Rome at daybreak we reached Antium towards evening.

2. Having obtained supreme command Ariovistus leads his troops across the Rhine.

3. To the soldier who had said this the general replied in these words.

4. The enemy having followed us, we were compelled to march all night.

5. Men say that the messengers, having said these words, departed.

6. Having delayed at Rome we did not reach the camp before midnight.

7. The Gauls having approached the city we could not escape unobserved.

8. The temple having fallen many desperadoes sought for gold and silver.

9. We ought to offer pity to those who have suffered.

10. Fearing an attack we did not go outside our fortifications.

Exercise 46

With all speed.	Cursu incitato.
To await the issue.	Rei eventum experiri.
To win the day.	Victoriam reportare. (i.e. To carry back victory.)

1. We addressed the Gauls who had entered the city.

2. My foot having slipped I fell from the wall.

3. Daring to attack the enemy we shall win the day.

4. After gaining the highest office in his native land he died.

5. After the death of Caesar Octavianus became chief of the state.

6. Having followed the Gauls with all speed we compelled them to halt.

7. We left the assembly in anger and did not await the issue.

8. After the entrance of the enemy into the city we set out from another gate.

9. When the general's horse fell a cry was raised on all sides.

10. We obtained a suitable place and pitched our camp.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

Consider the English:

The Gauls, having been conquered, seek peace.
The praetor brings the captured messengers to Caesar.
Caesar granted pardon to the captured soldier.

Here 'having been conquered' and 'captured' are passive participles and consequently are translated directly into Latin.

Galli victi pacem petunt.
Praetor nuntios captos ad Caesarem adducit.
Caesar veniam militi capto dedit.

Rule 25. **A Past Participle Passive in English may be translated directly into Latin provided that the corresponding Latin verb is transitive and is not deponent.**

Caution. Special care is needed to avoid inventing P.P.P.'s for verbs which are transitive in English but intransitive in Latin. In this connection remember that verbs governing a genitive (only), a dative (only) or ablative (only) are Intransitive.

Now consider the English:

Having taken the city he burnt it.

Notice that the common word for 'to take' in Latin—capio—has no form which means 'having taken.' But it has a form meaning 'having been taken.' Now what is the 'having-been-taken' thing in this sentence? The city. The English 'He burnt the (having-been) captured city' is the Latinised form of the English sentence.

Urbem captam incendit.

Hence the rule,

Rule 26. **The Past Participle Active (in English) may often be translated into Latin by a PASSIVE past participle in agreement with the object (Direct or indirect).**

e.g. ***Having captured the messenger Caesar spared him.***
Caesar capto nuntio pepercit.

They captured the spies and brought them to Caesar.
Speculatores captos ad Caesarem adduxerunt.

Now consider a different case.
Having conquered the Gauls Caesar set out for Britain.

(1) There is no word in Latin meaning 'having conquered.'

(2) The (having-been) conquered people (i.e. the Gauls) is neither subject nor object of the main verb.

(3) 'The Gauls having-been-conquered' stands apart from the grammatical structure of the sentence. It will then be put in the Absolute case in Latin i.e. the Ablative.

Gallis victis Caesar ad Britanniam est profectus.

Having seen the enemy we retreated.
Hostibus conspectis pedem retulimus.

Having burnt the city the Romans confiscated the land.
Urbe incensa Romani agrum publicum fecerunt.

Exercise 47

Quicker than might have been expected. Celerius omni opinione.

1. Marius, having been elected consul, soon showed his weakness.
2. The Germans having been defeated their cavalry returned home.
3. After the defeat of the Germans news came that Ariovistus was killed.
4. The defeated Gauls sought peace.
5. The cavalry captured the scouts of the enemy and brought them to Caesar.
6. We captured this city and marched on.
7. Caesar promised to pardon the captured chiefs.
8. The defeated leader renewed the battle more quickly than might have been expected.
9. Having set fire to the houses the soldiers fled.
10. Having heard these reports (things) the Romans decided to encamp.

Exercise 48

By weight of numbers. Multitudine (e.g. suorum).

1. After drawing up his troops he addressed them.
2. Cicero arrested Piso and condemned him to death.
3. Why have the defeated Gauls thrown away their arms and fled?
4. The consul then seized the sword and hid it from the centurion.
5. When this disaster was inflicted on the Romans the Carthaginians thought the war was over.
6. The Carthaginians, advancing at full speed, overcame the Romans by weight of numbers.
7. Hurling their darts the Romans charged.
8. Piling their packs the soldiers began to dig a ditch.
9. Having bridged the Rhine Caesar advanced into Germany.
10. Now that Cicero is made consul I shall ask him for help.

THE PARTICIPLE—(*Continued*)

Consider the English:

(a) *Having pardoned the chiefs Caesar continued his march.*
(b) *Having reached the gates we greeted the sentries.*

The Latin verbs *ignosco* I pardon, and *pervenio* I reach, are intransitive and, consequently, have no perfect participles passive, i.e. no forms denoting 'having been pardoned,' 'having been reached.' The participial phrase in English will be translated into Latin by a subordinate clause.

Rule 27. The absence of the Perfect Participle Passive in an Intransitive Verb is supplied by a cum-clause (cum = when) with its verb in the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

Thus:

(a) Caesar, cum principibus ignovisset, rursus profectus est.
(b) Cum ad portas pervenissemus custodes salutavimus.

Obs. 1. But if the corresponding verb in Latin is deponent the Participle will of course be used. (Rule 24.)

Having set out at daybreak we marched all day.
Prima luce profecti totum diem iter fecimus.

Caution. Beware of inventing a passive meaning for a deponent participle.

He fled, followed by the Gauls.
Gallis sequentibus, fugit.

PARTICIPLES (NOTE)

In translating the Perfect Participle, the following questions, asked in the order given, will be helpful.

(1) *Is the verb a deponent?*
If it is, use the participle agreeing with the subject or object or in an Ablative Absolute.

(2) If the verb is not a deponent, *is it intransitive?*
If it is, use a 'cum' clause with the subjunctive.

(3) If the verb is *not a deponent and is transitive,* see that the participle is expressed in the passive voice, and use it in agreement with the subject or object of the sentence or in the Ablative Absolute.

Exercise 49

To reserve for another time. Ad aliud tempus reservare.

1. Running to the rampart we saw that the Gauls were advancing.
2. Why, after pardoning so many men did you then show severity?
3. Having reached the camp the messengers sought Caesar.
4. Having met Murena outside the walls we welcomed him.
5. After resisting the Gauls for three hours we were at last compelled to surrender.
6. Reaching the city at nightfall the sentries did not allow him to enter.

7. Next day, having entered the city, he complained about the sentries.

8. The soldiers, exhorted by Caesar, fought more bravely.

9. Having ordered the soldiers to advance he sent away his own horse.

10. Arrived at your house we awaited your return.

Exercise 50

Without success. Re infecta.

1. After revenging his brother, Gaius formed plans for overturning the state.

2. Mounting an elephant Hannibal was carried through the swamp.

3. While fortifying the camp we were thrown into confusion by a sudden attack of the enemy.

4. Drawing their swords the Romans charged.

5. We reached the town about midnight and were refused admittance.

6. Returning to Rome at midday he went to his own home.

7. We saw the enemy burying their dead.

8. The soldiers seized the spy and dragged him before Labienus.

9. He pardoned the messenger and dismissed him.

10. After attacking the village for several hours the Gauls retreated without accomplishing anything.

Exercise 51

To receive the surrender of. In deditionem accipere.

1. He made this wise reply to his questioners.

2. Concealing his weapon the spy crept towards the sleeping king.

3. Being attacked by the Gauls Caesar was compelled to retreat.

4. The city being reached at last, tired though we were,[1] we went to the Senate House.

5. Having pardoned the prisoners Caesar sent them home.

6. After many wounds had been given and received Dumnorix drew off his forces.

7. The enemy was defeated on the left wing and after a fierce charge we were victorious.

8. Caesar declared that he would not receive the surrender of the town unless all arms were handed over.

9. At the approach of night we pitched a camp.

10. Having determined on this plan I will not abandon it.

Exercise 52

The power of Rome. Res Romana.
To come to the throne. Ad regnum pervenire.

After the expulsion of Tarquinius the Romans determined that they would never allow a king to reign at Rome. It was[2] with good reason that they hated both him and his son for they had proved cruel and unjust. Immediately after coming to the throne the king arrested and slew the supporters of Servius.[3] Moreover he violated the custom, handed down from former times, of consulting the senate on all matters.

Nevertheless, by victories over foreign enemies[4] he increased the power of Rome. The booty captured in these wars he set aside for the purpose of building a great temple.

[1] quamvis fessi.
[2] Omit 'it was.' Say, they hated with good reason.
[3] Say, those who were favouring.
[4] Use Ablative Absolute.

NOTE ON PARTICIPLES

The learner should notice the preference for participles which is characteristic of the Latin language. Before attempting the continuous passages which follow, the examples on this page should be carefully studied.

(1) The Latin participle often takes the place of a main verb in English.

Ex. *He set out at dawn and travelled to Brundisium.*
Prima luce profectus Brundisium iter fecit.
We captured the messengers and dragged them to the general.
Nuntios captos ad ducem traximus.

(2) A participle, in Latin, often replaces an English clause introduced by 'while,' 'when,' 'after,' 'as,' 'since,' 'although.'

Ex. *While he was sleeping Marcus was killed.*
Marcus dormiens est interfectus.
After we heard this we departed.
Quibus auditis discessimus.
When Caesar received the letter he was angry.
Caesar, litteris acceptis, iratus est.
Many men went out to meet Murena as he was returning to the city.
Multi Murenae ad urbem revertenti obviam exierunt.

N.B. In the last three examples the phrases 'on hearing this,' 'on receipt of the letter,' 'on his return to the city' might be used in English but the Latin would still be the same.

(3) Thus English phrases are often turned by Latin participles.

Ex. *The landing of the army caused the greatest consternation among the Britons.*
Exercitus expositus summum Britannis pavorem fecit.

In the reign of Romulus. Romulo regnante.
Despite your disapproval. te dissuadente.
Without success. re infecta.

Exercise 53

To possess great influence. Multum valere.
To administer the republic. Rem publicam gerere.

Yet not even by these victories did Tarquinius win the good will of his people.[1] Soon, driven from Rome, he was compelled to flee to the king of the Etrusci.

After his expulsion elections were held in Rome. Two consuls were chosen from the patricians, who, as has been shown above, were the descendants of those men whom Romulus first made senators. It was the duty of the consuls to administer the republic after consulting the senators.

But the senate soon possessed the greatest influence in the state. New consuls were elected every year, but senators remained in the senate until they died or until they were removed by the censors after committing some crime.

Exercise 54

Including slaves. Cum servis.

When consuls were first[2] elected the territory of Rome was perhaps fifteen miles long and ten broad. Moreover, the population, including slaves, was only about 120,000. From these humble beginnings, however, the Romans, having first subdued Italy, next conquered the Carthaginians and finally ruled over all the countries bordering on the Mediterranean sea. Often they were defeated but never did they display greater courage and resolution than in adversity. Yet after accomplishing these great deeds the Romans, changing their customs and becoming idle and soft, were at last defeated by barbarians.

[1] Use 'animos conciliare sibi.'
[2] With what should this word agree?

ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

Consider the English:

(a) *Will you go to Rome or Baiae?*
(b) *Do you favour Caesar or Pompey?*
(c) *Do you intend to come or not?*

Fully expressed these questions would be: Will you go to Rome or will you go to Baiae? etc. No interrogative particle is used in English.

Rule 28. In Latin alternative questions are introduced by utrum or (more rarely) -ne. The 'or' is always an. 'Or not' is annon.

(a) Utrum Romam an Baias ibis?
(b) Caesarine an Pompeio faves?
(c) Utrum venire in animo habes annon?

Obs. Aut and vel (meaning 'or') are only used in statements. Aut excludes one alternative, vel permits both alternatives.

Exercise 55

At daybreak. Prima luce.

1. Are you willing to set out at daybreak or shall we remain here till the third hour?
2. Do you support Cicero or Catiline?
3. Ought we to choose Caesar or Pompeius as dictator?
4. Shall we spend our holiday at Tibur or do you prefer Baiae?
5. Are you hoping to become propraetor of Spain or Bithynia?
6. Shall we buy corn in Sicily or Egypt?
7. Will you be ready to march to-morrow or not?
8. After conquering the enemy so often shall we now advance or retreat?
9. Have you come to defend yourself or to ask for pardon?
10. Will he, who has once surrendered to the enemy, again fight bravely or will he show cowardice?

APPOSITION

(a) *We shall see Athens, the capital of Greece.*
(b) *Regulus, the Roman consul, returned to Carthage.*
(c) *This sword belongs to my brother Marcus.*

Here the noun 'capital' describes Athens, 'consul' describes Regulus, 'brother' describes Marcus.

The latter words are said to be in apposition with the former.

Now consider the Latin:

(a) Athenas, caput Graeciae, visemus.
(b) Regulus, consul Romanus, Carthaginem rediit.
(c) Hic gladius est Marco, fratri meo.

Rule 29. In Latin, as in English, nouns in Apposition are in the same case.

Obs. 1. Latin uses Apposition more extensively than does English. The following examples should be carefully noted.

The river Metaurus.	Metaurus flumen.
The city of Rome.	Urbs Roma.
The pleasant island of Sicily.	Sicilia, amoena insula.

Obs. 2. Descriptive adjectives attached to the proper names of people are turned into Latin thus:

The gallant Cato.	Cato, vir fortissimus.
The haughty Claudius.	Claudius, homo superbissimus.

Obs. 3. Nouns and adjectives often stand in apposition to the personal pronoun indicated by the verb ending. Thus:

We all escaped.	Omnes effugimus.
I, your general, exhort you.	Vester dux vos hortor.

Obs. 4. Notice carefully the following.

I was the first to leave the city.
Primus ex urbe discessi.

He was the last to surrender.
Ultimus se dedidit.

No Roman leads us.
Nemo Romanus nos ducit.

I see you have no friend.
Video neminem esse tibi amicum.

Exercise 56

To give allegiance to Caesar. Fidem Caesaris sequi.

1. He was the first to enter the fray and the last to withdraw.
2. We hope that the learned Cicero will defend us.
3. Surely you will not vote for that desperado, Catiline?
4. No general has won so many victories.
5. We all gave our allegiance to Caesar.
6. Brutus was not the first to stab Caesar.
7. He left Rome when a boy but in his old age (say—an old man) he returned.
8. Will you be the first to withdraw from the battle?
9. Hasdrubal was defeated near the river Metaurus.
10. At the beginning of spring I left the pleasant town of Corioli and went to the island of Sicily.

Exercise 57

Standard of living. Consuetudo victus.

1. He travelled to Athens, a city in which the learned Plato lived.
2. No consul has ever displayed greater valour.
3. Were you all present at the house of Gaius?
4. He reported that no Roman was afraid on that dreadful day.
5. I, your consul, I, who work day and night for the state, summon you.
6. The gallant Cato ought not to be prosecuting my unfortunate client.
7. It is said that Caesar has taken Bratuspantium, a well fortified city.
8. The standard of living of the barbarian Germans excited the derision of the more civilized Gauls.
9. My learned brother defended Roscius.
10. Saguntum, a prosperous Spanish town, was captured by Hannibal.

Exercise 58

To form a picture in our minds. Cogitatione imaginem fingere.

Let us now try to form in our minds a picture of Italy at the time when Rome became a republic. Along the sea coast, from Brundisium to Neapolis, were many colonies founded by Greeks. Some for one reason and some for another[1], had left their native country and sought homes in Italy.

Having founded their cities they did not try to extend their territories but by ploughing the surrounding fields and by trading they became rich and prosperous. Their way of life, however, was somewhat luxurious. When, much later, they came to grips with the Romans they were quickly defeated and compelled to obey the rule of Rome.

Exercise 59

Movable property. Res.
As soon as. Ubi primum.

The interior was inhabited by semi-barbarous tribes who differed[2] in race, language and customs. These folk had built towns and surrounded them with walls, on the banks of streams, on the tops of hills and near the passes of the mountains. They, too, cultivated the fields and most of them lived in cottages on their farms. They were accustomed to retire with all their movable property within their fortifications as soon as an enemy made a sudden raid on their territory. This frequently happened for, throughout the whole of Italy, the number of inhabitants was increasing rapidly but the fertility of the soil was decreasing.[3] Thus it was that the citizens of these little states were continually at war with one another, led on by hope of increasing their plough land.

[1] Alii ob alias causas.
[2] Use 'inter se' after 'differs.' (See Vocab. for parts).
[3] Use passive! Why? (See note on page 171.)

Exercise 60

To provide a way into.	Dare aditum in.
From the countryside.	Ex agris.

Here are two stories of Romans who displayed their valour in difficult circumstances. Lars Porsenna, having become the ally of Tarquinius, led a large army against Rome. Everyone moved from the countryside into the city which seemed to be safe by reason of its walls and the barrier of the Tiber.[1]

But a bridge of piles provided a way into the city for the enemy. This bridge was usually broken down on the approach of a hostile force but on this occasion Porsenna had arrived at the river and the bridge was still standing.[2] Horatius, however, with two companions crossed the bridge and took up a position in the narrow approach, three men against an army.

Exercise 61

To hold one's ground.	In loco perstare.
This reckless courage.	Haec tanta audacia.

The soldiers of Porsenna were at first stupefied at the sight of such reckless courage. Then three chiefs who had rushed forward to dislodge the Romans were seen to fall. Again and again Etruscan soldiers attacked the Romans and tried to overwhelm them, but Horatius and his comrades fought fiercely and, though sorely wounded

[1] Tiberi obiecto. [2] Integer remanebat.

were able to hold their ground. At last the bridge was tottering and the senators ordered the gallant three to retire. Lartius and Herminius ran across the bridge into safety[1] but Horatius remained where he was. Then the bridge fell. Yet not even then did Horatius surrender. Praying to the god of the river and sheathing his sword, he plunged into the swollen stream, reaching the further shore[2] amidst the plaudits of both Romans and Etruscans.

Exercise 62

To become downhearted.	Animum demittere.
Matters are in this position.	Ita res se habet.

But Lars Porsenna did not immediately withdraw his troops nor abandon the siege; and so the Romans were soon seriously embarrassed by a scarcity of provisions. Yet the Romans did not become downhearted nor think of surrendering the city. When matters were in this position Gaius Mucius, a young nobleman, swam the river and came, unnoticed, to the Etruscan camp. There he saw two men dressed in handsome garments,[3] one of whom was busy paying the soldiers. Thinking that he was the king, Mucius drew his weapon[4] and stabbed him. Thereupon he was seized and dragged before the real Porsenna for the man whom he had killed was only the king's secretary.

[1] in salutem. [2] altera ripa.
[3] Say, conspicuous by their clothing. [4] pugio-onis (m.)

Exercise 63

To torture. (Aliquem) supplicio afficere.

Mucius, however, was not affected by his danger and even boasted that he knew of many plots against the king's life.[1] On hearing this Porsenna was the[2] more angry and resolved to torture the young man and thus compel him to reveal the plots of which he had spoken. But, as the slaves were approaching, Mucius thrust his right hand into the fire and then:

'Look, O king,' he said, 'there are in Rome three hundred men who, like me, prefer pain to dishonour and who have sworn to take your life.'

Then the king, admiring the young man's fortitude and terrified at the threatening danger, dismissed Mucius and, a little while afterwards, broke camp and returned home.

[1] Say, of killing the king. [2] Eo.

PART TWO

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES: FURTHER USES OF THE CASES

CUM, SINCE. SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Certain subordinate clauses in Latin always have their verbs in the Subjunctive Mood. The English, in many cases, gives no indication of this. Of such clauses those introduced by CUM, *since,* are examples.

Rule 30. When CUM is used to translate since, the verb in the -clause is always in the Subjunctive.

But what tense of the Subjunctive? This will depend on the tense of the Main Verb. Thus:

Main Verb Indicative		*Subordinate Verb Subjunctive*	
A.	Present or Future or Future Perfect or Perfect (i.e. true Perf. e.g. I have advised).	Present or Perfect	A.

Main Verb Indicative		*Subordinate Verb Subjunctive*	
B.	Imperfect or Pluperfect or Perfect (i.e. true Past, e.g. I advised).	Imperfect or Pluperfect	B.

Obs. 1. Tenses A are called Primary Tenses.
" B " " Secondary or Historic Tenses.

Obs. 2. The Imperative ranks as a Primary Tense.

The following examples should be carefully studied:

A.
(a) *Since these things are so I desire to speak.*
Quae cum ita sint cupio loqui.

(b) *Since Hannibal has been defeated he will seek peace.*
Hannibal, cum victus sit, pacem petet.

B.
(c) *Since so many men were hurling darts no one could stand on the wall.*
Cum tanta multitudo tela coniceret in muro consistendi potestas erat nemini.

(d) *Caesar, having determined to winter on the continent, demanded corn from the Aedui.*
Caesar, cum hiemare in continenti constituisset, Aeduos frumentum poposcit.

Exercise 64

Revolution.	Res novae.
The conservative party.	Optimates.

1. Since you are a man of the greatest dignity you ought not to do this.

2. Since he was both needy and extravagant he was eager for revolution.

3. Being a man of such wisdom you will be able to defeat the Gauls.

4. Since the conservatives were administering public affairs the poor were oppressed.

5. Since he had great influence in the state Caesar sought to win him over.

6. Having come for the purpose of killing Caesar he was seeking helpers.

7. Since we were present Catiline could not address his friends.

8. Since all the men were assembling before headquarters, the general was compelled to address them.

9. Since I was intending to go to Greece I decided to sail from Tarentum.

10. The Romans not being skilful sailors the Carthaginians defeated them at sea.

Exercise 65

Especially since. . . . *The more so because. . . .*	Praesertim cum.
Worthy of. . . .	Dignus-a-um (with abl.).

1. We ought to try to make peace, especially since we have suffered so great a disaster.

2. We all think that Caesar was justly killed since it seems that he was seeking to be made king.

3. It was difficult to conquer the Romans since they were skilled in war.

4. We will not praise these men since idleness is always blameworthy.

5. Our elders increased the power of Rome since they always renewed the fight as soon as possible after suffering a disaster.

6. Since these things are so, we shall be compelled to join battle immediately.

7. Since you set out for Athens why are you making for Alexandria?

8. At this moment inactivity is disgraceful especially since the consuls are enrolling all citizens for the defence of the city.

9. Since I left Rome at daybreak I was not able to see your brother.

10. Since I saw that I could not influence the tribune's mind I finished my speech and sat down.

CORRELATIVES. THE CO-ORDINATE RELATIVE

Consider the English:

(a) *This is such an enemy as our fathers defeated.*
(b) *This is as great a ship as I have ever seen.*
(c) *There are as many opinions as there are men.*

In (a) the word 'as,' in (b) and (c) the second 'as,' is evidently relative in force.

This is even more evident in the Latin.

(a) Hic hostis est talis qualem maiores vicerunt.
(b) Haec est tanta navis quantam vidi unquam.
(c) Tot sunt sententiae quot homines (sunt).

Rule 31. The relative 'as' must be translated by the Latin relative which corresponds with the demonstrative in the main clause.

Demonstrative	*Relative*	
Tantus -a -um, *so great*	Quantus -a -um,	*as*
Talis -e, *of such a kind*	Qualis -e,	*as*
Tot, *so many*	Quot,	*as*
Tam (with adj. and advs.) *as*	Quam	*as*

The Co-ordinate Relative

Consider the English:

(a) *Caesar arrived in Rome and when I saw him I said these things.*
(b) *He will not come and* } *therefore I am angry.* / *for that reason I am angry.*

Latin:

(a) Caesar Romam pervenit quem cum vidissem dixi haec.
(b) Venire nonvult quamobrem irascor.

Rule 32. The English 'and' with a personal or demonstrative pronoun may often be translated into Latin by the relative.

Exercise 66

The world (*fig.*). Homines.

1. Caesar was such a man as the world seldom sees.
2. Marius was as brave as he was foolish.
3. The enemy are as numerous as the leaves of a wood.
4. The senate refused to pardon the defeated general and therefore he went into exile.
5. I have never seen such weapons as these soldiers were carrying.
6. The Gauls had never seen so great a tower as Caesar built.
7. The victors were as weary as the vanquished.
8. He was never thought to be such a man as his father was.
9. I went to the house of Caesar and when he came into the hall I conversed with him.
10. Never have I seen so great a town as Rome.

Exercise 67

I disagree entirely. Omnino dissentio.

1. Let us strive to be such men as our fathers were.
2. I could not go to the city and therefore Cicero came to me at Baiae.
3. Cicero was asked for his opinion and when he had spoken he left the Senate house.
4. Surely you do not intend to trust a man of such character as Catiline? I am utterly opposed to his policy.
5. To-day the walls of Rome are as strong as they ever[1] were.
6. How many cavalry are coming? Caesar is bringing as many as he can muster.
7. The chief threw himself at Caesar's feet but, having heard his petition, Caesar did not pardon him.
8. Who had ever seen so great an army as Caesar was then leading?
9. He refused to pardon the prisoners and therefore they were put to death.
10. On the next day I reached a little farm such as Horace tells of.

Exercise 68

A few years after he left Rome. Paucis post annis quam Roma discessit.

A few years after the city had become free, the Roman people, entering into alliances with many Latin towns, had become the head of a strong[2] League. The

[1] semper = always. [2] multae.

Romans, nevertheless, had many troublesome neighbours and were frequently compelled to wage war in defence of their territories. For many years the people of Veii, a town[1] about fourteen miles from Rome, were their bitterest foes. Often the Romans returned defeated to their city but, as has been said, they were never so resolute as when they had suffered a reverse. And so, since they always refused to admit themselves beaten, they eventually conquered the Veientines.

Exercise 69

A match for. Par (dat.).

It seemed therefore that the Romans, under the leadership of their consuls, were a match for their foreign enemies. But in peace time the plebeians complained bitterly that they were wrongfully oppressed by the patricians. Frequently, after hostile forces had been driven off, the plebeians discovered that their farms had been destroyed. Since they were poor men, they were compelled to borrow money from the patricians on harsh terms. Thus the plebeians often said that they were safer in the field fighting the enemy than they were at home, oppressed by their creditors. At last the plebeians were allowed to elect magistrates of their own, called Tribunes of the People, for the protection of their interests.

[1] quod oppidum.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

Consider the English:

(a) *He sent soldiers* *to attack the city.*
(b) *in order to attack the city.*
(c) *in order that they might attack the city.*
(d) *that they might attack the city.*
(e) *so that they might attack the city.*

Here all the words 'to,' 'in order to,' 'in order that,' 'that,' 'so that,' are used to introduce a clause expressing the same idea, viz. *the purpose* of sending the soldiers.
One Latin sentence may be used to translate all these English sentences.

(a), (b), (c), (d), (e) **Milites misit ut urbem oppugnarent.**

Rule 33. **Purpose may be expressed in Latin by a subordinate clause introduced by 'ut.' The verb of the subordinate clause must be in the Subjunctive.**

Obs. The present in primary sequence and imperfect in historic sequence are the only tenses of the Subjunctive used in purpose-clauses.

Now consider the English:

(a) *He left Rome* *in order that he might not see Caesar.*
(b) *so that he might not see Caesar.*
(c) *lest he might see Caesar.*
(d) *to avoid seeing Caesar.*
(e) *to save himself from seeing Caesar.*

Latin:

(a), (b), (c), (d), (e) **Roma discessit ne Caesarem videret.**

Rule 34. **In purpose-clauses which contain a negative word (or an idea of avoidance or prevention) use ne in place of ut.**

I left Rome to prevent Caesar from seeing me.
Roma discessi ne Caesar me videret.

Obs. In adjectival clauses use 'se' and 'suus' to refer to the subject of the adjectival clause. In other dependent clauses use 'se' and 'suus' to refer to the subject of the main clause.

Exercise 70

To enlist sympathy. Aliquem alicui conciliare.
To bribe. Pecunia corrumpere.

1. The Romans sent forces to attack the Veientines.
2. Our cavalry followed the enemy to cut them off from the town.
3. We left Rome early on the next day so that we might overtake Caesar.
4. Marius has supported Saturninus to consolidate his own position.
5. He would not come to Rome lest he should see Sulla.
6. Many old soldiers will support Catiline so that they may not lose their farms.
7. Hannibal will have attacked the consul to prevent his coming to the help of his colleague.
8. How many citizens have been bribed to prevent Caesar from becoming consul?
9. Is Gracchus giving corn to the people to enlist their sympathy for himself?
10. I cannot support such a man as Caesar in order to win office.

Exercise 71

To make an agreement between themselves. Inter se consentire.

1. Caesar left the senate house to avoid meeting Catiline.
2. Caesar and Crassus made an agreement between themselves to prevent Pompeius from obtaining supreme command.
3. I fear to climb the rocks lest I fall.
4. The Gauls rowed up stream to avoid being seen by the Roman scouts.
5. Never leave the city to avoid being present at the elections.
6. I ought to go to my country house to see my slaves.
7. Who will come to Florence with us to visit Marius?
8. How many soldiers have been sent to prevent Caesar from attacking Corfinium?
9. Will Domitius ask pardon from Caesar in order to save his life?
10. Bibulus with his fleet set out from Tarentum to prevent Caesar's troops from crossing to Epirus.

PURPOSE CLAUSES—(*continued*).

Consider the English:

He sent soldiers in order that they might attack the city.
He sent soldiers to attack the city.

This might also be expressed in English:

He sent soldiers who were to attack the city.

So in Latin:

Milites misit qui urbem oppugnarent.

Obs. 1. Qui in such a sentence is equivalent to UT II.
2. The verb must of course be in the Subjunctive.

The following rule, extending this idiom, must be carefully observed.

Rule 35. If a purpose clause contains a comparative adjective or adverb use QUO (equivalent to ut eo) instead of ut.

They threw away their arms to escape more quickly.
Arma abiecerunt quo celerius effugerent.

We built a wall so that the city might be better fortified.
Murum aedificavimus quo urbs esset munitior.

Obs. 1. After a verb of motion, the supine in '-um' may be used to express purpose.

Te mane salutatum Romam ibo.
I shall go to Rome to pay you a morning-call.

Obs. 2. In the sentence 'Dixit urbem captum iri,' 'captum' is the supine expressing purpose after the verb of motion 'iri' (used impersonally in the passive) and 'urbem' is the object of 'captum.'

Obs. 3. It may be noticed now that there are four ways of expressing Purpose in Latin.

(a) Servos misit ut Gracchum interficerent.
(b) " " qui Gracchum interficerent.
(c) " " {ad Gracchum interficiendum. / Gracchi interficiendi causa.
(d) " " Gracchum interfectum.

Exercise 72

The rear guard.	Novissimum agmen.
In light marching order.	Expeditus -a -um.

1. He sent the cavalry to pursue the Gauls.

2. Caesar has sent the legions in light marching order to overtake the enemy's rear guard.

3. So that they may escape more quickly they will throw away their arms.

4. The Remi sent their chief men to seek peace.

5. We will build a city in which to house our gods.

6. We have all brought weapons with which to defend ourselves.

7. To arrive the sooner Caesar is marching at full speed.

8. To become wiser, work harder but do not neglect to read good books.

9. We made the wall ten feet higher so that the city might be better protected.

10. His friends sent messengers to Caesar to warn him.

RESULT-CLAUSES[1]

Consider the English:

(a) *The soldiers were so terrified that they were throwing away their arms.*

(b) *So great a storm has arisen that we cannot sail.*

The underlined words denote *results* which actually occur in consequence of the facts set out in the main sentences.

Latin:

(a) Milites adeo territi sunt ut arma abicerent.

(b) Tanta tempestas est coorta ut naves solvere non possimus.

Notice:

(1) The results in English are expressed by the Indicative, in Latin by the Subjunctive.

(2) The negative is UT NON.

(3) In both English and Latin there is a preparatory word in the main sentence, e.g., so, adeo; so great, tanta.

Rule 36. Results in Latin are expressed by an ut-clause with the Subjunctive (Negative, ut non).

Obs. 1. Sequence of tenses: In Result-clauses the Present, Imperfect and Perfect Subjunctive are used, and in historic sequence the Perfect Subjunctive may be substituted for the Imperfect, when the *completion* of the result is emphasized.

[1] Also called 'Consecutive Clauses.'

Example:

The enemy attacked our men so suddenly that they fled.
Hostes nostros tam subito adorti sunt ut fugerint.

Obs. 2. Results are also expressed in English by the Infinitive. e.g. *The storm is great enough to prevent our sailing.* They are never expressed thus in Latin: such English must be turned into the form:

The storm is so great that we cannot sail.
before translation into Latin.

Exercise 73

An unfavourable position. Iniquus locus.

1. So dense was the fog that we could not see the enemy.
2. The enemy are so numerous that we cannot hope to win a victory.
3. His shield was not large enough to cover him.
4. Horatius was brave enough to defend the bridge.
5. He wept so piteously that we pardoned him.
6. The enemy is numerous enough to prevent our advance.
7. The position was so unfavourable that we could not fight.
8. Caesar encouraged his men so that they might fight the more bravely.
9. The Romans were now in such an unfavourable position that the enemy easily overpowered them.

Exercise 74

To make a speech.	Orationem habere.
Advance guard.	Primum agmen.

1. So swiftly did they march that the advance guard reached the city at daybreak.
2. There are as many women as men in the city.
3. There were so many women in the city that the food began to fail.
4. Hortensius made so long a speech that the judges became weary.
5. The advance guard is marching so quickly that they will soon overtake the Gauls' rear guard.
6. We did not think that so brave a man would flee from the battle.
7. He was so brave that he would never flee from the battle.
8. We have been to Tibur so often that this summer we intend to go to Baiae.
9. So great is the virtue of uprightness that we love it even in an enemy.
10. Caesar's legions were so well disciplined that they easily defeated the cavalry of Pompeius.

Exercise 75

Draw up a line of battle. Aciem instruere.

1. The Gauls advanced so quickly that the Romans could not draw up their line of battle.
2. They had defeated the Gauls so often that now they despised them.
3. We have collected so many men that we can await the issue calmly.
4. The Gauls were so terrified that they would not leave their fortification.
5. I have never seen soldiers so brave as those who captured Carthage.
6. The soldiers were so brave that they captured Carthage.
7. The river is so deep that we cannot cross it.
8. The wall is not so high that we cannot climb it.
9. So great an army as Caesar's cannot be defeated.

RESULT-CLAUSES—(*Continued*)

Consider the English:

He is the man to conquer the Gauls.

Here the English means:

He is a man of such a kind that he may conquer . . .
or
He belongs to that class of men who are likely to . . .

The Latin is:

Is est qui Gallos vincat.

Also notice:

There was no one so brave that he dared to fight.

There was no one who dared to fight.

Nemo erat qui pugnare auderet.

Rule 37. **The relative qui, may be used to introduce a clause denoting the class to which a person belongs. The verb is in the subjunctive.**

Exercise 76

Politics.	Respublica (not used in pl.).
A quiet life.	Otium.

1. He was not the man to retreat.
2. There is no one here to send to Gaul.
3. The men were so terrified that they would not advance.
4. No one is so terrified as to be unwilling to advance.
5. There have been many who, in search of a quiet life, have withdrawn from politics.
6. Caesar is not the man to destroy the state.
7. Who is so cowardly as not to be willing to fight for his country?
8. Surely[1] no one is base enough to prefer a quiet life to political activity?
9. Is[2] anyone brave enough to climb that peak?
10. Surely no one trusts Caesar enough to follow him?

[1] Num quis. [2] Ecquis.

PURPOSE AND RESULT-CLAUSES—(*Continued*)

Notice the translation of '*that no one*,' et cetera, in Purpose and Result-clauses.

	Purpose	*Result*
that no one	ne quis	ut nemo
that nothing	ne quid	ut nihil
that never	ne unquam	ut nunquam
that none	ne ullus	ut nullus
that nowhere	ne usquam	ut nusquam

Notice also.

And...not in a double Purpose-clause is neve (neu).
And...not in a double Result-clause is nec (neque).

Exercise 77

To be annoyed.	Ferre graviter. (acc. of thing).
Not to act like the rest.	Nihil earum rerum facere.
His chief reason for doing this.	Id ea maxime ratione fecit.

1. He was so discouraged that no one could comfort him.
2. How many men do you intend to send to the relief of the town?
3. Tribunes were elected so that no plebeian should suffer wrongfully.
4. So numerous were the enemy's forces that no place seemed safe.
5. Will you send help soon to prevent any soldier dying of hunger?
6. Caesar advanced so quickly that the Gauls could not remove anything from their camp.

7. Send soldiers to the ends of the ditch so that no Gauls may be able to surround us.
8. Murena was too upright to act like the rest.
9. His chief reason for doing this was to prevent any plebeian from becoming consul.
10. Coriolanus was so annoyed that tribunes had been elected that he left Rome and never returned.

Exercise 78

To be in difficulties. Laborare.

1. Our men have fought so bravely that nowhere can the enemy make a stand.
2. The plebeians were so angry that they left their ranks and marched out to the Sacred Mount.
3. Cicero determined to reserve his speech for another time so that no citizen might miss the opportunity of hearing it.
4. We were in such difficulties by reason of the weight of the enemy's numbers that nowhere could we sustain their attack.
5. Many soldiers were found ready to climb the cliff.
6. He stationed so many men on the wall to prevent the enemy's entrance.
7. He stationed so many men on the wall that the enemy could not enter.
8. He was considered so wise that the people reverenced him and never disobeyed him.
9. So great a host is advancing that there will be no opportunity of holding our ground.
10. Caesar stationed pickets so that no one should leave the town unobserved.

Exercise 79

To be a candidate for the consulship.	Consulatum petere.
To bring to trial.	(Aliquem) reum facere.

On one occasion[1] the plebeians were so enraged that they nearly killed a certain patrician. This man was so famous for his deeds at the siege of Corioli[2] that the name Coriolanus had been given him. Coriolanus had always been haughty and unbending. Therefore when he was a candidate for the consulship he was not the man to beg for the votes of the plebeians. The plebeians resented this and Coriolanus was defeated. Nevertheless he did nothing to conciliate the people and even when the poor were oppressed by famine he was unwilling to give them corn except[3] for money. When this was known the plebeians determined to seize Coriolanus and to throw him from the Tarpeian rock as if[4] he had been a traitor. Coriolanus escaped but soon afterwards was brought to trial and exiled.

Exercise 80

The Romans are in desperate case.	Romani suis rebus diffidunt.

Coriolanus went straight to Rome's enemies, the Volscians, to endeavour to stir them up against the Romans. At once he succeeded, for the Volscian king believed that with the aid of such a man he would destroy the power of Rome. Quickly a large army set out and the Romans, since the plebeians were

[1] Olim accidit ut.
[2] Use Ablative Absolute.
[3] Nisi pretio accepto.
[4] Velut.

still disaffected, were in so desperate a plight that they sent ambassadors to ask for peace. Coriolanus, however imposed harsh terms which the senators were unwilling to accept. The priests were then sent to ask for milder terms but they were firmly refused. Then for the second time women came to the help of the Roman people when in difficulties. The wife and mother of Coriolanus, with a company of ladies, set out for the Volscian camp to find Coriolanus. Coriolanus received them courteously but his mother showed herself as proud as he was and would not allow her son to kiss her. 'Am I' she said 'in the presence of my son or of Rome's enemy?' Coriolanus was so affected by these words that he withdrew the army without inflicting any injury on the Romans.

Exercise 81

At such a crisis. In tanto rerum discrimine.

Thirty years after the Volscian war the Romans were compelled to fight the Sabines and the Aequians at the same time. In such a crisis the Romans decided to appoint a dictator to whom they might entrust the supreme command. Cincinnatus who, though a poor man, was a patrician, was named. A deputation was sent to his farm to bring him to Rome. The messengers found him ploughing but, when he had heard their news, he donned his toga and, leaving his work, set out for the city. Arrived there he set to work to organize an effective resistance.[1]

[1] Say, did all things for the purpose of repelling the enemy.

VERBS AND EXPRESSIONS OF FEARING

Consider the English:

I was afraid to go away.

Latin: Timebam abire.

Here, the subject of the two verbs is the same and the verb of fearing is followed by the Infinitive in Latin as in English.

Now consider:

(a) *I am afraid that something will happen.*
I am afraid lest something will happen.

(b) *He was afraid that the soldiers would not come.*

Latin: (a) Timeo ne quid accidat.
(b) Verebatur ne milites non venirent.[1]
Verebatur ut milites venirent.

Rule 38. After verbs of Fearing (a) when the subjects are the same the infinitive may be used when the infinitive is active, (b) when a second subject is introduced or the dependent verb is passive ne must be used to translate both 'that' and 'lest,' ne non or ut to translate 'that . . . not.'

Obs. 1. The Future Subjunctive (p. 115. Obs. 3.) is used after verbs of Fearing only when special stress is placed upon the idea of probability.

Obs. 2. After verbs of Fearing use Present or Perfect Subjunctive in primary sequence, Imperfect or Pluperfect in historic sequence.

Obs. 3. This construction also follows phrases denoting fear.

Examples:

There is a danger that the enemy will attack us.
Periculum est ne hostis nos oppugnet.

There was a fear that Cicero would not be elected Consul.
Metus erat ut Cicero consul fieret.

Note. Timeo is the general word. *Vereor* often has the idea of reverence. *Metuo* emphasises the apprehension of the subject.

[1] 'non' goes closely with the verb.

Exercise 82

There is a danger. Periculum est.

1. Are you afraid to leave the city by night?
2. Surely you were not afraid that I would not come?
3. Is there a danger that the enemy will learn our plans?
4. You are not afraid of seeming a coward?
5. A wise man ought not to fear that fools will hurt him.
6. Be afraid to lie.
7. Caesar feared that the Aedui would not send corn.
8. The citizens were afraid that the enemy had not been defeated.
9. I greatly fear that this will not benefit you.
10. It was said that he was not afraid of dying.

Exercise 83

Politicians. Qui in re publica versantur.

1. Caesar was not afraid to go to the Senate house on the Ides of March.
2. Are you afraid that the soldiers will not come?
3. The politicians were afraid that the citizens would kill them.
4. The soldiers feared that the Gauls would elude them.
5. There is a danger that Caesar will advance on Ariminum.
6. Why are you afraid of supporting our present day politicians?
7. Pompeius said that he was not afraid of attacking Caesar.
8. Such was his terror of the Alps that he always went to Massilia by sea.
9. I fear that no one will believe you.
10. The danger was that no reinforcements would arrive.

DEPENDENT COMMAND AND PETITION

Consider the English:

A. (a) *Return to Rome, Cicero!*
(b) *Do not remain at Baiae, Cicero!*

B. (a) *Atticus* { *begged* / *ordered* / *persuaded* } *Cicero to return to Rome.*

(b) *Atticus* { *urged* / *exhorted* / *warned* } *Cicero not to remain at Baiae.*

The sentences (A) might be addressed to Cicero in a tone of command, of persuasion or of request. It will be noticed that in sentences (B) this fact is reported.

In Latin sentences (B) are written:

Atticus { oravit Ciceronem / imperavit Ciceroni / monuit Ciceronem } ut Romam rediret.

Atticus { hortatus est Ciceronem / precatus est Ciceronem / persuasit Ciceroni } ne Baiis maneret.

Rule 39. **Verbs of ordering, begging, advising, are followed by a clause introduced by ut or ne, denoting the action ordered, begged for or advised. The verb is in the Subjunctive mood. The sequence of tenses is the same as in purpose-clauses.**

Obs. Iubeo, to order, veto, to order . . . not (i.e. to forbid) take the accusative and infinitive.

Caesar ordered the cavalry to advance.
Caesar equites progredi iussit.

Caesar ordered his men not to leave the camp.
Caesar suos e castris egredi vetuit.

Caution: **Iubeo is not followed by a negative. For 'order . . . not,' use imperare ne (subj.) or vetare.**

Exercise 84

To seek Caesar's protection. Caesaris fidem sequi.
To leave the ranks. Ab signis discedere.

1. Gracchus persuaded the people to demand corn at a low price.[1]
2. Sulla ordered his soldiers not to remain in the camp.
3. Will you beg your father not to come to Baiae?
4. Labienus advised the young men to seek Caesar's protection.
5. You ought not to advise a young girl to disobey her mother.
6. Cassius urged Brutus to serve the state and not to favour Caesar.
7. Cicero exhorted Catiline to leave the city.
8. It is said that Crassus begged the Senate to appoint him to the command of the army.
9. Do you intend to order the Aedui to supply corn?
10. Order your men not to leave their ranks.

[1] parvi.

Exercise 85

To take the offensive. . . Aggredi.

1. We suggested to him that he ought to go to the country.
2. Was Q. Cicero forbidden to take the offensive against the Belgae?
3. We exhorted him not to leave home at so critical a time.
4. Cicero implored the citizens not to decree that he should go into exile.
5. Verres begged the judges to acquit him and not to listen to Cicero.
6. Can a centurion order his men to charge against the wishes of his general?
7. No one exhorts his friend to hate him.
8. The staff officers were ordered to march the troops against the Helvetii.
9. You were persuaded to remain by the tears of Tullia.
10. I wish that Cicero could have been persuaded not to write so many letters.

DEPENDENT COMMANDS—(*Continued*)

Cautions:

(1) The English 'tell' is often used as a verb of ordering, e.g. *He told the sailor to set sail.* In this sense 'tell' must always be translated by impero or iubeo.
'Tell . . . not to' is either Imperare ne or vetare (infinitive). Iubere must not be followed by a negative.

(2) Some verbs of advising are used in two senses, e.g.
(a) *Scouts warn Caesar that the Gauls are at hand.*
(b) *Scouts warn Caesar not to advance.*
In (a) the scouts' message deals with a fact, i.e. the nearness of the Gauls, consequently the accusative and infinitive will be used.
(a) Speculatores Caesarem monent Gallos adesse.
(b) Speculatores Caesarem monent ne procedat.
Such verbs are—suadere, persuadere, monere.

Obs. 1. Ut or ne-clauses are also used after verbs of 'performing,' 'caring for' and the like. Such verbs are perficere, efficere, curare, impetrare, and all of kindred meaning.

Ex. *I shall cause you to understand.* Efficiam ut intellegatis.

Obs. 2. Notice construction of statuo, constituo:
(a) *He determined to take the town.*
Constituit oppidum capere.
(b) *He determined that the soldiers should advance.*
Constituit ut milites procederent.
In (a) where both verbs have same subject, the infinitive is used.
(b) where the verbs have different subjects, an ut clause (negative ne) is used.

Exercise 86

To pay tribute. Vectigal pendere.

1. Caesar was warned that the Helvetii were about to cross the Rhone.
2. The Aedui warned Caesar to collect all his forces.
3. Do not tell him to vote for Murena.

4. The soldiers demanded from their general that he should not spare the prisoners.
5. A decree was passed to the effect that the knights should be chosen as judges.
6. Caesar determined to attack the city.
7. Caesar determined that the Britons should pay tribute to Rome.
8. I am persuaded that I ought to seek Caesar's protection.
9. We were persuaded by the scouts not to advance on that road.
10. Tell me your name! Then I will tell you by name to lay aside your fear.

Exercise 87

Pass a decree. Decernere.

1. A decree was passed to prevent the allies becoming Roman citizens.
2. Labienus will see to it that a bridge be built across the Rhone.
3. Can you persuade Caesar to remain at Brundisium?
4. There is danger in attempting to persuade Caesar to leave Egypt.
5. Cleopatra begged Antonius not to return to Rome.
6. Why have you encouraged the boys to learn to write Latin?
7. They begged us to permit them to tell the soldiers to support Murena.
8. We were the first to warn Caesar to distrust Pompeius.
9. He was told not to attack the enemy but he disobeyed his general's orders.
10. We were ordered not to allow the enemy to pass the river.

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS

Consider the English:

A
(1) *Is Caesar well?*
(2) *What is Marius doing?*
(3) *How was the town taken?*
(4) *Of what size is the army?*

And now:

B
(1) *He asked whether Caesar was well.*
(2) *He wondered what Marius was doing.*
(3) *He explained how the town was taken.*
(4) *He knows the size of the army.*

Group A contains questions which are asked directly. In group B the words underlined refer to the same set of circumstances as those in group A. But now we are told that Question 1 was 'asked' and that Question 2 was thought about, that Question 3 was answered, and that someone knew the answer to Question 4.

Notice that, grammatically, the underlined words are the OBJECTS of the verbs 'asked,' 'wondered,' 'explained,' 'knew.' They are called Dependent Questions.

Rule 40. **Dependent questions in Latin are clauses supplying the object[1] of verbs of asking, thinking, answering and knowing.**
Their verbs are always in the subjunctive.

Examples:
Rogavit num Caesar valeret.
Miratus est quid Marius faceret.
Exposuit quomodo oppidum captum esset.
Scit quantus sit exercitus.

[1] Dependent questions may also be the subjects of phrases like 'incertum est.'

Obs. 1. Object clauses of verbs of asking, etc. are not always Dependent Questions. They may be dependent petition or statement, e.g. He asked me to go. I thought that I would go.

Obs. 2. Interrogative particles are used as in Direct Questions. In a single dependent question num is used for 'if' or 'whether.'

Obs. 3. The usual sequence of tenses is used but provision is made for a subjunctive future made up of the Future Participle and the Present Subjunctive of esse in Primary Sequence, the Imperfect in Historic Sequence.

Examples:
He wonders whether Caesar will come.
Miratur num Caesar venturus sit.
He wondered whether Caesar would come.
Miratus est num Caesar venturus esset.

Obs. 4. 'When' in questions, direct or indirect, is always quando.

Rule 41. **Double dependent questions are introduced by utrum or -ne followed by an. When the second part is negative necne is used instead of annon.**

N.B. In some well-known phrases the first half of a double dependent question is suppressed and the second part only, introduced by an, is expressed. Such phrases are:

haud scio an
nescio an
dubito an
} *I almost think, I am inclined to think, perhaps, probably.*

Exercise 88

Some one.	Nescio quis. cf. Nescio quis me monuit. Someone advised me.
To fail someone.	Deesse (dative).

1. It is hard to say whether he is a wise man or a fool.
2. No one knew when he would arrive.
3. Perhaps you ought to go.
4. We were enquiring when the army was likely to arrive.
5. Someone asked whether Caesar's soldiers were in difficulties through lack of supplies.
6. I almost think that Crassus failed Caesar on that day.
7. Perhaps he did this by design.
8. Marius did not know whether to oppose Sulla or to flee.
9. He first asked if the town had been captured.
10. He is, unquestionably, the man to put in command of the army.

Exercise 89

In the height of summer.	Summa aestate.
At the end of summer.	Aestate confecta.
To hold a levy.	Delectum habere.

1. We are wondering what you will do.
2. Caesar wondered how he could become consul while absent from Rome.
3. Tell me when you expect to arrive.

4. Do you not know how to address the soldiers?
5. Perhaps when the summer is ended we shall return to Rome.
6. Have you not yet discovered where the enemy is encamped?
7. Do not tell me why you said that.
8. Whether we shall conquer or be conquered is uncertain.
9. Have you heard when the consuls intend to hold a levy?
10. Enquire why they are leaving.

Exercise 90

Under arms.	In armis.
To maintain friendly relations (with someone).	Esse amicus (alicuius).

1. He believed that he knew how many troops were under arms.
2. He said that no one knew which of the consuls was to remain at home.
3. Don't you know why Caesar crossed the Rubicon?
4. Who knows if he will come?
5. Caesar was anxious to know whether Pompeius wished to maintain friendly relations with him.
6. Let us ask (ourselves) whether it is not better to advance than to retreat.
7. Surely, he said, you will not prefer shame to glory?
8. It is still uncertain whether Caesar has captured Ariminum.
9. We asked someone where the camp was.
10. Have you not heard how many Gauls are approaching?

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS—(*Continued*)

Obs. The use of the dependent question is a marked feature of Latin writing. It is often used where English uses abstract nouns, and may be regarded as an illustration of the simplicity of thought and directness of expression of Latin.

(a) *He did not fully realise the nature of the danger.*
Parum sensit quale esset periculum.

(b) *We wish to learn* { *the size of the enemies' army.* / *the numbers of the enemy.* }
Volumus cognoscere { quantus sit hostium exercitus. / quot sint hostes. }

(c) *He was asked the reason for his departure.*
Rogatus est quamobrem discessisset.

(d) *We do not know his object in doing this.*
Nescimus quo consilio hoc { faciat. / fecerit. }

(e) *There is no precise information as to the locality of the battle field.*
Incertum est ubi sit pugnatum.

(f) *Caesar sought to learn the state's military capacity.*
Caesar conatus est cognoscere quid ea civitas in bello posset.

Exercise 91

To pass a decree.	Consultum facere.
To proceed to show.	Docere.

1. He thought of the many occasions on which (say—how often) the Senate had passed this decree.

2. Caesar sent scouts to discover the nature of the mountain.

3. Pompeius proceeded to show how Caesar had broken the laws.

4. Do you know his object in doing this?

5. The general decided to learn what the valour of the enemy could accomplish. (Say—what the enemy could do by valour.)

6. First let us discover the size of their army, and then its destination. (Say—whither it was going.)

7. Having heard this we knew our duty. (Say—what we ought to do.)

8. How great is his influence, do you think?

9. I hardly think that the people will discover Catiline's designs.

10. I wondered why he greeted me for I knew the extent of his hatred for me.

Exercise 92

By a stratagem. Dolo.

1. Have you learned the destination of those ten cohorts?

2. We have discovered neither their point of departure nor their present position.

3. Possibly the enemy will move his camp to-morrow.

4. He asked me whether I did not think that Caesar was rightly killed.

5. The fellow did not know what he ought to say nor when he ought to be silent.

6. We wonder whether Caesar took the town by a stratagem.

7. I refused to tell them my reason for so doing.

8. I hardly think that they will attempt to discover our whereabouts.

9. Do not waste time in seeking the origin of that rumour.

10. Did they tell you the time of his arrival?

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT SPEECH

Rule 42. All verbs in clauses dependent upon a reported statement, question or command are in the Subjunctive mood.

Examples:

He said that the men who killed Caesar were fools.
Dixit eos qui Caesarem interfecissent esse stultos.

He asked why the soldiers spared the captives who had tried to escape.

Rogavit cur milites captivis qui effugere conati essent, pepercissent.

He orders all present to stand.
Iubet omnes qui adsint, surgere.

Exercise 93

By assault. Vi et armis.

1. Caesar said that all who surrendered should be spared.
2. Marius knew that he would be vanquished when Sulla came.
3. Do you know where the messenger, who arrived yesterday, has gone?
4. I think they told him what he wanted to hear.
5. He did not know whether the soldier who brought the message had been wounded.
6. News has come that the army which Caesar commands, is victorious.
7. Have you not heard that the city which so long resisted our army has been captured by assault?

8. He learnt that the mountain which overhung the road was held by the enemy.
9. I am inclined to think that the slave who wrote the letter belongs to Balbus.
10. We hope that they will never reach the place to which they have set out.

Exercise 94

On land and sea.	Terra marique.
To give evidence.	Testimonium dicere.

1. He was instructed to make for the place where the Remi were encamped.
2. We were informed that the farm lies on the right hand as one journeys[1] from Rome to Veii.
3. Let us summon the soldier who brought the news.
4. I tell you that I have not seen the woman who sold the books.
5. Caesar ordered all who could carry arms to mount the rampart.
6. Can you persuade your father, a man whom all respect, to give evidence?
7. The messenger reported that the bridge which had been built, was destroyed.
8. I hardly think that such a man as your brother will be condemned.
9. We were persuaded to buy the books which the woman offered.
10. Tell me how to defeat the army which Caesar leads.

[1] Dat. sing. of pres. part.

Exercise 95

In brief compass. *Brevi.*

It is impossible to recount in brief compass the means by which[1] Rome became mistress[2] of all Italy. But when this was finally accomplished the Romans speedily realized how numerous and how powerful were the new enemies who opposed them. Chief among these were the Carthaginians, a sea-faring people whose ships sailed over the whole Mediterranean and who had established trading-posts at every suitable point on its shores. The Carthaginians, seeing how many convenient harbours the Romans now possessed, were afraid that they would soon become their rivals. The Romans, on their side, feared that, since the Carthaginians were firmly established in Sicily, their commerce would be hindered. A pretext for war was soon found.

Exercise 96

Fight a naval battle. Proelium navale facere.

It is not difficult to imagine[3] how terrified the Romans were when they realized that to conquer Carthage they would be compelled to fight a naval battle. Never before had they fought on the sea, nor had they ships in which to fight. They however set about building a great fleet and taught slaves to row on dry land. When the fleet was finished and the crews trained

[1] qua ratione or quibus artibus. [2] dominari (in + abl.). [3] facile intellegi potest.

they put on board each ship a company of their infantry, for they had determined that they would fight a land battle on the sea. To accomplish this they furnished each ship with a heavy grappling iron so that when this was thrown into a Carthaginian ship the ships were fastened together, and the infantry could board and fight hand to hand.

By these tactics[1] the Romans conquered the Carthaginians.

EXERCISES FOR REVISION

Exercise 97

All the world knows. Quis nescit?

But Carthage was too great a power to be[2] finally destroyed by a few defeats. Moreover among her citizens there was a man, Hannibal by name, who both hated Rome and who was also most skilled in the art of war. I almost think that the world has seen no greater general except[3] Julius Caesar. The Carthaginians themselves would not go to war but hired soldiers to fight for them, nor were they always willing to provide the money to pay these mercenaries. Hannibal however, collected a large army and after capturing the Roman city of Saguntum marched to the Alps. Crossing these mountains he descended upon Italy where he remained in the midst of an enemy country for fourteen years. All the world knows how many were the defeats he inflicted on the Romans and how great the panic he often caused them.

[1] By these means. [2] Say, potentior . . . quam ut. [3] nisi.

Exercise 98

To be on the march. Iter facere.

From this story Hannibal's skill as a general may be understood.[1] The Roman forces were in the vicinity of Lake Trasimene under the command of the consul, Gaius Flaminius. Hannibal well knew how reckless and headstrong this commander was; so he determined to entrap him. First he laid waste all the country between Cortona and the lake, the more to stir up his enemy to avenge the injuries done to the allies.[2]

When he knew that Flaminius was on the march Hannibal selected a place suitable for an ambush, near the Lake Trasimene, where a narrow road runs between the mountains and the lake. At the end of this road there is a plain large enough to hold a small army. Here Hannibal encamped with his Africans.

Exercise 99

To push on. Iter non intermittere.

He next led his light-armed troops behind the mountains and posted them in a position where they would be hidden from an enemy marching along the road. His cavalry he caused to be posted behind certain mounds which lay near the approach to the road. Having made these dispositions he awaited the approach of Flaminius. That impetuous commander pushed on, without[3] seeking to find out the nature of the country or even the whereabouts of the enemy. Early in the morning he advanced, men and baggage, along the narrow way. When the Roman rear had passed the entrance to the defile Hannibal gave the signal and the encumbered Romans were attacked from the front, flank and rear at the one moment. Few escaped the ensuing disaster.

[1] Say, it can be understood how skilful a general. . . .
[2] done *to* the allies . . . sociorum. [3] nec.

Exercise 100

There is sufficient evidence. Satis constat.
To force an engagement. Ultro inferre signa.

[1]Another shameful disaster to the Roman arms occurred at Cannae. There is sufficient evidence that this defeat also was caused by the foolishness of one of the Roman generals. Both consuls, Paulus and Varro, were in the field. The latter, a man of over impetuous temperament,[2] was continually urging his more prudent colleague to engage in a pitched battle. Paulus, however, fully realized the cunning and resource of his enemy, and sought to persuade his colleague against making any rash move. Once he saved the army from a trap skilfully laid by Hannibal but, on the second occasion, when the Carthaginian had carefully chosen his ground Varro forced an engagement.

Exercise 101

In the very moment of victory. Victoria iam explorata.

Hannibal drew up his troops in such a way as to encourage the Roman infantry to attack his centre. The Romans easily broke through this weak[3] line but, in the very moment of victory,[4] they discovered how completely they had been out-witted. For the strong wings of Hannibal's army closed in on them and shut them off from their supports. In their extremity the Romans tried to cut their way back to the lines[5] but they were so exhausted by wounds and fighting that they were no match for Hannibal's unwearied troops who, without serious losses, cut the Romans to pieces.

[1] Use accipere cladem, 'Romani' subject. [2] ingenium. [3] tenuis-e.
[4] In view of the general sense of the passage, alter the word 'iam' to 'fere' in the phrase. [5] Say, camp.

Exercise 102

History tells us. Memoriae traditum est.
The problem was. Quaesitum est.

But history tells us that Hannibal was at last defeated by the bold strategy of Gaius Claudius Nero. Hasdrubal had collected a large army and had crossed the Alps with the intention of effecting a junction[1] with his brother. Hannibal, however, was in Apulia, and by good luck or by the interposition of providence[2] the messengers sent to inform him of Hasdrubal's position were captured by the Romans. The problem was, therefore how the Romans could defeat Hasdrubal before Hannibal should learn of his arrival. After long deliberation the following plan was adopted on the advice of Nero.[3]

Exercise 103

Picked troops. Delecti milites.

Hasdrubal had advanced to the river Metaurus where he was opposed by a Roman army. Nero proposed[4] to reinforce this army with picked troops from the army of Apulia. There was a danger that Hannibal would notice that the Roman forces had been weakened and attack the camp. Nero however, managed to withdraw

[1] Say, join his forces with.
[2] Consilio deorum.
[3] Say, Nero advising.
[4] Use velle.

6000 men and to commence his march without Hannibal's knowledge. Men and women came in crowds from the countryside and watched them pass, praying for their success. Food was left in dumps[1] at convenient places so that nothing should hinder the march. At last within the space of seven days this heroic band completed a journey of 230 miles and entered the Roman camp unobserved by Hasdrubal.

Exercise 104

One night's rest. Spatium unius noctis ad quietem.

On the day after Nero's arrival a battle was fought. The Romans whose spirits were raised[2] by the presence of Nero and his soldiers fought with such dash that the enemy could not withstand their attack. After a battle which lasted for many hours the Carthaginians were defeated and put to rout,[3] Hasdrubal himself being slain. But Nero's task was not yet accomplished. One night's rest he gave to his men. Then he began the long journey back to Apulia in order to checkmate Hannibal who was preparing to move towards Umbria. Again Nero's soldiers marched through crowds of countrymen who hailed them as the saviours of the state.[4] As for Hannibal—he first received news of the battle when the head of his brother was tossed over the rampart of his camp.

[1] Say, heaped up.
[2] Say, courage (animus) was increased.
[3] fusi fugati sunt.
[4] vindices rei publicae.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Rule 43. The impersonal verbs oportet, it behoves, decet, it beseems, dedecet, it misbeseems, take the accusative and infinitive.

I ought to go away.
Me oportet abire.

Obs. 1. When the English infinitive is in a past tense, Latin uses the present infinitive with the past tense of the impersonal.

Thus:

I ought to have gone away.
Me oportuit abire.

Note: The same tense usage occurs with debere, e.g. Debui abire.

Rule 44. The following impersonal verbs take an accusative and infinitive, or an accusative and genitive of a noun. Either the infinitive or the genitive expresses the cause of feeling indicated by the verb.

paenitet,	*it repents.*
piget,	*it irks.*
pudet,	*it shames.*
taedet,	*it wearies.*
miseret,	*it pities.*

We are ashamed that we did this.
Nos pudet haec fecisse.

We are ashamed of our sloth.
Nos pudet ignaviae.

Rule 45. The following verbs take the Dative and Infinitive:—

licet,	*it is permitted.*
placet,[1]	*it pleases.*
libet,[1]	*it pleases.*
videtur,	*it seems good.* (only impersonal in this sense.)

Example:

We are permitted to go away.
Nobis licet abire.

We decided to stay in Rome.
Nobis placuit Romae manere.

Obs. Licet and placet are also followed by the subjunctive, with or without 'ut.'

[1] *placet* = 'it seems right' or 'proper.' Hence *placuit* often = 'it is resolved' or 'decided.' libet = 'it suits (my) fancy.'

Exercise 105

To go to meet. Obviam ire (dat.).
To meet. Obviam fieri (dat.).

1. Cato was ashamed of his obstinacy.
2. I am sorry that I did not meet you.
3. Cicero was weary of life.
4. I ought not to have allowed the prisoners to escape.
5. The senate decided to hear the ambassadors.
6. You may give him that sword.
7. Have you decided to join Caesar?
8. You ought to have addressed the soldiers.
9. Are you not ashamed of your ignorance?
10. Why are we not permitted to become free men?

Exercise 106

The Senate decided.... Senatus censuit (ut)....

1. Were you not ashamed of your avarice?
2. We ought to have left Rome in the morning.
3. May we depart now?
4. We blushed for your ignorance.
5. The Senate decided to send ambassadors to sue for peace.
6. Did it please you to warn Antonius?
7. How ought we to have decided this question?
8. My inactivity wearies me, but Caesar has promised to come to-morrow.
9. Are you not sorry for having told so many lies?
10. We must warn Caesar to hasten to Rome.

IMPERSONAL VERBS—(*Continued*)

Rule 46. The following impersonal verbs and phrases are followed by an ut clause (negative ne). The person affected is in the Dative.

it happens (by chance),	accidit.
it happens (as a result),	evenit.
it happens (naturally),	contingit.
it happens by chance,	casu accidit.
hence it happens,	ita fit.
it is possible,	fieri potest.
it remains,	restat. / reliquum est.

Obs. Notice carefully the constructions with *refert*[1] and *interest,* both meaning 'it concerns,' 'it is of importance.'

(1) The *person* or (rarely) the *thing* concerned is put in the genitive case.

It is to the interest of Murena.
Murenae interest.

N.B. *Interest* is more frequently used than *refert* in this construction.

(2) The genitive of the personal pronouns, however, must not be used thus. Instead, the ablative feminine singular of the possessive pronouns must be used. i.e. mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra.

It is my concern. / *It is of importance to me.*	Mea refert (interest).
It is your concern. / *It is of importance to you.*	Vestra refert (interest).

(3) The *thing* which is of concern or importance may be represented by (a) a neuter pronoun (hoc, id, illud, quod, quid) (b) an infinitive or accusative and infinitive (c) an indirect question or (d) (with *interest* only), an ut or ne clause.

[1] *Rēfert* = 'it concerns' is not a part of *rĕfero.* Possibly meā rēfert was, originally, the phrase *ex meā rē fert* = 'it is to my advantage.'

Examples:

(*a*) *That is of importance to me.* Id mea refert.

(*b*) *It is of importance to Caesar to defeat Pompeius.* Caesaris interest vincere Pompeium.

(*c*) *What does it matter whom we meet?* Quid nostra interest quibus obviam eamus?

(*d*) *It was of importance to Cicero that Clodius should be checked.* Illud Ciceronis intererat ut Clodius coerceretur.

Note. This ut or ne clause is usually in apposition with a neuter pronoun. Cf. illud, in the above example.

(4) The degree of concern or importance is expressed by an adverb or a Genitive of Value (see page 154).

This makes very little difference to me.
Id mea minime interest.
It was of little importance to me.
Mea parvi intererat.

Exercise 107

It was exceedingly opportune. Satis opportune accidit.
It was very inconvenient. Perincommode accidit.

1. It happened most inconveniently that you had never seen him.
2. It happened that on one night all the Hermae were thrown down.
3. It was exceedingly opportune that the defenders arrived at this moment.
4. It may be that I was deceived.
5. Hence it happens that Divitiacus was not so influential as I thought.
6. And the consequence was that the Gauls were pardoned.

7. The only course left is to fight.
8. It remains that where the state is there are we.
9. It is of importance to us to elect Murena consul.
10. This is of the greatest importance both to you and to Caesar.

Exercise 108

To be indignant that.	Dolere (acc. and infin.).
To ride the storm.	Tempestatem ferre.

1. It was a matter of the highest concern to the state that the hands of the enemy should be restrained.
2. It was of importance not so much to him as to the state that he should not show fear.
3. The result was that he was robbed of his money on his way home.
4. The province fell to him by lot.
5. It is surely possible that he said this in anger?
6. Thus it happened that the Gauls gained possession of the town.
7. Moreover they were indignant that their children had been taken away.
8. Besides, they rode the storms more easily by reason of their height.
9. Does it matter to me that Caesar has defeated Pompeius?
10. It may be that Romans have been defeated by barbarians.

Exercise 109

To concentrate everything into one's own hands.	Omnia ad se contrahere.
The powers of government.	Summa rerum.

Many authorities describe the condition of the Roman state in the years which immediately followed the Carthaginian wars.[1] With the utmost pertinacity the plebeians had striven to improve their position, and thus it happened that they were now eligible for most of the important offices. Since all who held these offices became senators the result was that a new order of nobility arose. These new nobles disregarded the stern manners of an earlier age[2] and devoted themselves to the acquisition of wealth and to the concentration of the powers of government into their own hands. It is therefore possible that the lot of the mass[3] of the plebeians was not changed for the better,[4] especially since the senate was now performing most of the functions which previously belonged to the council of the people.

[1] Say, during (per) the times nearest. . . . [2] priscae aetatis. [3] turba. [4] in melius.

Exercise 110

To make profits from. Lucra facere.
Extortion. Res repetundae.

Let us now ask how the new nobility governed Rome. It must first be admitted that they strove with might and main to extend the boundaries of the empire. But it is probable that they acted with a view to increasing their own power and importance, rather than to the common weal.[1] Many Romans who were sent abroad to govern provinces were not ashamed to make profits from the provincials[2] and frequently,[3] on returning to Rome, a magistrate was accused of extortion.[4] From this fact alone we may learn how greatly the Romans of this age differed from their simple and upright ancestors.

Exercise 111

To be influential. Multum posse.

There was also another class which was becoming influential in the life of Rome—the equestrian order. In former times its members were the sons of senators who were allowed to go to war as cavalry. But now the knights were rich business men, who though they held

[1] Say, to benefit the state. [2] incolae. [3] it very often happened. [4] genitive.

aloof from politics,[1] nevertheless used their wealth to secure advantages for themselves. Many of them paid huge sums in exchange for the right to collect the taxes in a province. Thus it was a matter of importance to them that the magistrate in charge of[2] the province should be well disposed to them. This they often ensured by bribing him.

Exercise 112

In the days of Cincinnatus. Cincinnato vivo.

History tells us that in the days of Cincinnatus most of the rustics owned their own farms. With the help of a few slaves a farmer sowed his seed, tended his olive trees and grapevines, led his pigs to the forest and cared for his oxen.

It was to his interest to work hard because his farm provided him with nearly all the necessaries of life. Moreover by[3] this kind of toil men become hardy and vigorous, fit to defend their own borders or, when occasion demands, to carry war into the territories of their foes.

[1] Say, did not busy themselves with (versor).
[2] who was set over (praeesse).
[3] Say, by work of this kind (eiusmodi).

Exercise 113

To swell the numbers. Multitudinem augere.

But in the days of Scipio Aemilianus all this had been changed. Although the population was larger there were far fewer farms. We do not know how this came about, but we may guess that the farmers, becoming disgusted with the drudgery of their daily toil, sold their farms. These were bought by rich men who added them to the great estates they leased. The work of these ranches[1] was done by a few slaves, with the result that fields which once supported[2] a hundred families now only supported[3] cattle and herdsmen. Meanwhile the farmers drifted to Rome and swelled the numbers of those idlers who were infesting the streets[4] of the capital —a mob too idle to work yet not ashamed to beg for bread.

Exercise 114

To frame a policy. Consilium inire.
To overturn the constitution. Rem publicam evertere.

There were however a few far sighted men in Rome who realized that such a changed manner of life would eventually destroy the power of Rome. One of them, a man of the highest character, by name Tiberius Gracchus, framed a policy by which he proposed to resume the public land which had been leased to the wealthy, and to apportion it among the poor. The senators were

[1] latifundia. [2] Say, provided the necessaries of life. . . .
[3] Use 'alo, alere, alui.' [4] frequentare vias.

violently opposed to this plan, since they feared that they would lose a great part of their wealth. Gracchus therefore brought forward the bill in the council of the people, a thing which no one had done for two hundred years. The senators then vehemently accused Gracchus of overturning the constitution and sought to arrest him. In the riot which followed Gracchus was killed.

Exercise 115

To inflict punishment on. Poenas sumere de.

Ten years after the death of Tiberius, his brother Gaius was elected tribune of the people. Gaius was a man of the highest ability but perhaps not so high-minded as his brother. Moreover he hated the senators and wished to inflict punishment on them on account of[1] his brother's murder. First, to win the support of the mob, he arranged that corn should be distributed from time to time at a nominal price. The result was that many ruined and worthless men were attracted to the city. In the second place he proposed to place the equites in charge of the courts. This proved disastrous[2] to the state, since the knights often used this new power to prosecute private feuds against senators. Shortly after the passing of these bills in the council of the people Gaius was murdered.

[1] Genitive. [2] Exitio erat (dat.).

THE GERUNDIVE OF OBLIGATION

Rule 47. The gerundive with ESSE is used to express obligation or necessity. The person by whom the action must or ought to be done is generally in the Dative.

Ex.

The camp must be moved.
Castra sunt movenda.

We must praise Caesar.
Caesar nobis est laudandus.

We shall have to greet Torquatus.
Torquatus nobis salutandus erit.

Obs. 1. The tense is indicated by the appropriate tense of esse. Intransitive verbs are used impersonally in this construction.

Ex. *The messengers must set out.*
Nuntiis proficiscendum est.

Obs. 2. The construction is used with deponent verbs.

Ex. *All must die.*
Moriendum est omnibus.

Obs. 3. With verbs which govern a dative the ablative of the agent is used instead of the dative.

Ex. *We must obey the laws.*
Legibus a nobis est parendum.

Obs. 4. The gerundive is never used to denote mere certainty.
Ex. *He must have reached home by this time.*
Domum profecto iam pervenit.

Exercise 116

Root and branch. Ab stirpe.

1. We must obey our parents.
2. Traitors must be put to death that honest men may enjoy a quiet life.
3. I rather think that we must set out at daybreak.
4. Carthage must be destroyed root and branch.
5. Everything had to be done by Caesar at the one time.
6. We have to go away, but you are not bound to accompany us.
7. The laws ought to be obeyed, but nevertheless we must do nothing disgraceful.
8. Caesar perceived that he must fortify a camp as quickly as possible.
9. Did you not know what you ought to have done?
10. All must delay.

Exercise 117

A bellicose spirit. Paratus ad dimicandum animus.

1. Caesar had to harangue the soldiers.
2. Faithless slaves must not be pardoned by their masters.
3. Every man knew from previous experience what had to be done.
4. Before soldiers fight they must don their armour.
5. Every preparation must be made for a campaign which will prove both long and arduous.
6. Caesar must reach the river before nightfall.
7. So bellicose was the spirit of the enemy that we had to retreat.
8. We must try to discover what these words mean.
9. Do you really think that the prisoner should be condemned?
10. You ought not to show the prisoners a way of escape.

Exercise 118

To make peace with. Pacem componere cum.

1. We must not wait here overlong.
2. You will have to make peace with Caesar.
3. Caesar should not have crossed the Rubicon.
4. Should we not consult the interests of the state?
5. Ask the consul when we are to set out.
6. Who said that the city must be assaulted to-morrow?
7. I almost think that the consul will have to hold a levy.
8. Are you under the necessity of going to meet Murena?
9. Must we not yield to the foe which hems us in?
10. Do you not know that we are bound to help our allies?

Exercise 119

To repeal the legislation. Leges abrogare.

During the years which followed the death of Gaius Gracchus the senatorial party was desirous of regaining its lost influence. In this the senators felt that nothing was to be done hastily. Therefore they neither attempted to repeal the legislation of Gracchus nor remove the equites from the courts. Meanwhile the popular party was quiescent. Its members[1] understood that their plans must be held over until a leader was found of sufficient influence to unite all the opponents of the senate. As it turned out, they had to wait for more than twenty years. But at last Gaius Marius won such fame as a general that the people willingly believed him to be the man to take up the cause of the oppressed masses.[2]

[1] plebs. [2] miseri et calamitosi.

Exercise 120

Conduct operations against. Rem gerere cum (abl).

A little[1] must be said about Gaius Marius. He was born of humble parents in a tiny village near Arpinum. Just after the death of Tiberius Gracchus he had been elected tribune of the people but nothing is known about his tenure of this office. When nearly fifty years of age he was given command of the cavalry in the army of Caecilius Metellus, who was then conducting operations against the Numidian king Iugurtha. He quickly resigned this command[2] and returned to Rome to contest the consular elections. The senatorial party, fearing that Marius was over-influential with the people, threw all its weight against him.[3] Nevertheless he was elected and returned to Africa as commander-in-chief.

Exercise 121

The popular idol. Gratiosissimus apud plebem.

It is uncertain whether the success of Marius is to be attributed to his ability or to his good luck.[4] Certainly the part played by the Ligurian soldier who, while gathering snails, found a way into Iugurtha's stronghold cannot be overlooked. Nor ought we to neglect the fact that Sulla by capturing Iugurtha actually ended the war. Nevertheless Marius became the popular idol, and when barbarian tribes threatened Italy the people decided that Marius must be sent against the invaders. In this campaign Marius proved even to his enemies that he was to be considered an able general, for he completely smashed the forces of the Cimbri and Teutones, thus saving Rome from the terror which a barbarian invasion always occasioned.

[1] pauca. [2] praefectura. [3] Say, 'did all things so that. . . .' [4] felicitas.

PREDICATIVE DATIVE

Consider the English:

He was an assistance to me.
This proved to be an assistance to me.
This hill serves as a protection for the city.

All the underlined phrases indicate some result or purpose.

Now consider the Latin:

Erat auxilio mihi.
Hoc erat auxilio mihi.
Hic collis est praesidio urbi.

Rule 48. Abstract nouns with the verb ESSE are put in the dative when they denote an effect or result. There is usually another dative of the person or thing interested.

Obs. The construction is sometimes extended to verbs of giving and choosing, and even to verbs of motion.

Ex. *He sent soldiers as a help to Caesar.*
Milites auxilio Caesari misit.

Exercise 122

In this style of fighting. Hoc in genere pugnae.

1. Caesar's support proved of the greatest assistance to me.
2. In this style of fighting the weight of their arms proved a hindrance to our men.
3. The river served as a protection to the town.
4. The general will send troops to our assistance.
5. Much learning proved a burden to him.
6. My father chose this book for my instruction.
7. Our initial success proved our undoing.
8. To give help to the wretched sometimes proves their ruin.
9. Gaius became a laughing-stock to the troops.
10. Send two thousand men to our aid so that we may not perish.

DATIVE—(*Continued*)

Rule 49. **Many other uses of the Dative are extensions of its characteristic usage, i.e. to indicate the recipient after a verb of giving.**

Thus (1) the Dative of advantage and disadvantage.
e.g. *He builds a house for his son.*
Tectum filio aedificat.

(2) The Dative of the possessor (with the verb esse).
e.g. *I have a sword.*
Mihi est gladius.

(3) The Dative of result or aim (compare the Predicative Dative).

e.g. (a) *Elections were held for electing consuls.*
Comitia creandis consulibus habita sunt.

(b) *They chose a place for a camp.*
Locum castris delegerunt.

Rule 50. **Certain transitive verbs are used with a change of meaning as intransitive verbs governing the Dative.**

e.g.	te consulo.	*I consult you.*
	tibi consulo.	*I consult your interests.*
	ventos temperat.	*He controls the winds.*
	irae temperat.	*He sets a limit to his anger.*
	servi nos metuunt.	*The slaves fear us.*
	tibi metuo.	*I fear for you.*
	te caveo.	*I am on guard against you.*
	tibi caveo.	*I am protecting your interests*

Exercise 123

To build a road.	Viam munire.
To work early and late.	Vigilare laborareque.
Lawyer.	Peritus iuris civilis.

1. The lawyer works early and late to protect the interests of his client.

2. The centurion snatched the sword from the soldier who was threatening the captives with death.

3. Engineers were selected for building the road.

4. I hardly think that Caesar is my friend.

5. The wretched captive threw himself at the king's feet.

6. To no one was my arrival a burden or an expense.

7. No news has come for seven months, and I fear for my brother's safety.

8. It is of great advantage to the state that men devote themselves to a profession which is of advantage to others.

9. Gaius has already given evidence which is especially damaging to the case of Verres.

10. Caesar wintered among the Treveri, a people very near the Belgae.

ABLATIVE

The following words govern an ablative:

(1) *Verbs.*

fruor (3).	*I enjoy.*
utor (3).	*I use.*
potior (4).	*I gain possession of.*
fungor (3).	*I perform.*
vescor (3).	*I feed on.*
dignor (1).	*I think myself worthy of.*
nitor (3).	*I lean on.*

(2) *Adjectives.*

dignus, -a, -um.	*worthy of.*
praeditus, -a, -um.	*endowed with.*
fretus, -a, -um.	*relying on.*
laetus, -a, -um.	*rejoicing in.*

(3) ***Phrase.***
Opus est (dative of person, ablative of thing), there is need of.

e.g. *You need help.*
Tibi opus est auxilio.

Many idiomatic uses of the Ablative are extensions of its use to express the Instrument.

(1) The road by which.
e.g. *We marched three days on a good road.*
Tridui iter bona via fecimus.

(2) Measure of difference.
e.g. *The sun is much greater than the earth.*
Sol multo (or multis partibus) est maior quam terra.

(3) The price at which a thing is bought.
e.g. *He bought a house for ten talents.*
Domum decem talentis emit.

(4) An attribute (physical).
e.g. *Britons have long hair.*
Britanni sunt capillo promisso.

(5) The manner in which something is done.
e.g. *They advanced at great speed.*
Summa celeritate progressi sunt.

Obs. 1. But in (5) if the phrase does not contain an adjective use cum with Ablative.
To live virtuously.
Vivere cum virtute.

Obs. 2. A few substantives are used without a preposition. These are adverbial in force, e.g. iure, *rightly*, more, *in the manner of*, vulgo, *commonly*, vi, *violently*, pedibus, *on foot*, casu, *by chance*.

Exercise 124

Into the heart of. In interiorem partem.

1. We enjoy the food we eat.
2. The man who performs his duties well need not fear the laws.
3. Relying on my legions I have no need of other help.
4. From this point we shall march on a good road into the heart of the enemy's country.
5. Ariovistus marched past Caesar and pitched his camp two miles off.
6. Any one can buy a thing like that for ten denarii.
7. It is commonly believed that Caesar was wrongfully slain.
8. The Gauls have huge bodies, but their spirit cannot brook the tedium of a long siege.
9. A man endowed with true valour should always think himself worthy of office.
10. Having gained possession of the town, we remained there for fifteen days.

Exercise 125

Without bloodshed. Sine ullo vulnere.

1. Rejoicing in the success of his operations[1] Murena thought himself worthy of the highest office.
2. How long, O Catiline, will you abuse our patience?
3. They thought it safer to gain the victory without bloodshed.
4. It is much more difficult.
5. Nero completed his march to the Metaurus river with incredible speed.
6. Did you intend to make for Brundisium on foot or by road?
7. The name of Rome was held in great esteem throughout the world.
8. These prisoners ought to be punished with the utmost severity, for they have not been wrongfully condemned.
9. Why do you attack a man endowed with such wisdom?
10. Why do you come before the judges in those dirty garments and with long hair and beard?

[1] res bene gestae.

ABLATIVE—(*Continued*)

From the Local Ablative follow such extensions as:—

(1) The Ablative of Respect.

He is a match for you in worth.

Ille tibi dignitate est par.

(2) The Ablative of the Supine after adjectives.

Easy to do.

Facile factu.

From the Ablative Proper, which (as the name of the case indicates), implies separation, the following constructions follow.

(1) The Ablative of Origin.

Begotten of Iuppiter.

Iove genitus.

(2) The Ablative of Comparison.

Marcus is older than Tullius.

Marcus natu maior Tullio est.

Obs. Here Tullius is the standard from which Marcus differs by being older.

Exercise 126

According to my opinion. Meā sententiā.

1. He was never a match for you in wisdom but only in cunning.
2. Wonderful to relate, we have not yet seen the enemy's forces.
3. Cicero, a man of equestrian rank, attained to the highest offices in the State.
4. He is believed by his accomplices rather than by the citizens as a whole.
5. Rome is far more famous than Veii, but I would rather live at Veii than in Rome.
6. The road over the mountains is much shorter than the coast road.
7. The Romans excelled the Carthaginians in their indomitable spirit rather than in weight of numbers.
8. Though of humble origin, he was endowed with outstanding ability.
9. This is much easier to do than that.
10. We have need of courage to-day, yet we have often conquered enemies more formidable.

USES OF THE GENITIVE

The genitive is used to express some quality inherent in the character of a person.

e.g. *A man of very great dignity.*
Vir maximae gravitatis.[1]

An extension of this usage is the genitive of indefinite price or value. The following words are used in this connection. Tanti, quanti, magni, pluris, maximi, nihili, parvi, minoris, minimi, flocci, (at a straw).

e.g. *This horse which I bought at a great price I now value at nothing.*
Hunc equum quem magni emi, nunc nihili aestimo.

The Genitive is used to express the whole, of which only a part is under consideration.

e.g. *Some of the soldiers.*
Pars militum.

The bravest of all.
Fortissimus omnium.

Obs. 1. This Partitive Genitive is used after substantives denoting a part, superlatives, interrogative pronouns, and after numerals when they represent part of a whole.

[1] This construction is used only when the noun in the genitive is qualified by an adjective.

Obs. 2. After uter and uterque, pronouns are in the genitive, but used with nouns, uter and uterque are treated as adjectives.

e.g. *Each of us two.*	Uterque nostrum.
Which of us two?	Uter nostrum?
Each of the two armies.	Uterque exercitus.
Which of the two armies?	Uter exercitus?

Obs. 3. The genitive of substantives and adjectives is used after the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns and after some adverbs.

Such are:

too much.	nimis.	*more.*	plus.
too little.	parum.	*some.*	aliquid.
enough.	satis.	*none.*	nihil.
how much.	quantum.	*what?*	quid?
a little.	paulum.	*much.*	multum.

Examples. *Too little courage.*
Parum virtutis.

Some pleasure.
Aliquid voluptatis.

A little delay.
Paulum morae.

Obs. 4. Notice the phrases:
Ubi terrarum Where in the world?
Eo[1] *magnificentiae* To such a pitch of splendour.

[1] *Eo* = thither—to that place.

Exercise 127

How much profit? Quantum boni?

1. Some of the senators decided to support Caesar.
2. Which of us two ought to leave Rome?
3. Twenty-five of the cavalry were wounded in this battle.
4. How much profit will result from this enterprise?
5. Cato had much wisdom but little prudence.
6. Do you value that house of yours greatly?
7. I do not think that the friendship of Caesar is worth a straw.
8. Surely Marius has enough self-control to conquer his vices.
9. There is some pleasure in a quiet life.
10. Send me the swiftest ship you have. (Say, the ship which you have the swiftest.)

Exercise 128

Common sense. Prudentia.

1. Pompeius possessed plenty of ability but he was not able to win the favour of the people.
2. The Romans were so contemptuous of Hannibal's attack on the city that the very field in which his army was encamped was sold at the usual price.
3. Can you buy corn at a cheaper price in Rome than in Alexandria?
4. Which of the consuls will be sent against Mithridates?
5. We need the bravest of your soldiers to withstand the enemy's attack.
6. Too much idleness will inevitably weaken inborn ability.
7. All of the soldiers declared that they would not desert their general.
8. Did you buy that book at such a price with the intention of giving it away?
9. Cato was a man of the greatest dignity and the greatest wisdom, but he lacked common sense.
10. Most of the tribunes were ready to forbid the consul's proposed bill.

THE GENITIVE—(*Continued*)

The Genitive is used after certain verbs.

e.g. *I remember,* memini.
I forget, obliviscor.
I feel pity, misereor.
I remind, admoneo. (Acc. of person.)

Why do you forget my kindness?
Cur mei beneficii oblivisceris?

I reminded him of his wisdom.
Eum sapientiae admonui.

The Genitive is used to denote the charge after a verb of accusing or condemning.

He was condemned for extortion.
Rerum repetundarum est condemnatus.

Obs. 1. *To condemn to death,* capitis damnare.

The Genitive is used depending on certain adjectives.

desirous of,	cupidus -a -um.
skilled in,	peritus -a -um.
ignorant of,	inscius -a -um.
aware of,	conscius -a -um.
mindful of,	memor.
unmindful of,	immemor.
without a share in,	expers, expertis
experienced in,	expertus -a -um.
full of,	plenus -a -um.
eager for,	avidus -a -um.

Exercise 129

Extortion. Res repetundae.
Ambitious. Cupidus imperii.

1. Verres was accused of extortion on his return from Sicily.
2. Never could Marius forget the insults of the nobles.
3. Catiline came to such a pitch of recklessness that he determined to burn Rome.
4. Where in the world can men live so happily as in Rome?
5. Catiline's friends were condemned to death by Cicero.
6. Caesar was skilled in all the arts which win popularity.
7. Never was Cato unmindful of the teaching of his ancestors.
8. Ambitious leaders are often the ruin of the state.
9. We pitied the defendant when he came before the judges in shabby garments and with unkempt beard.
10. Let me remind you of your former kindness to me.

EXERCISES FOR REVISION

Exercise 130

A patriot. Civis bonus.
To grasp the reins of power. Sedere ad gubernacula rei publicae.

After the battle of Aquae Sextiae Marius should have laid down his command and retired into private life[1]. He had done all that could be asked of a patriot. But Marius could never forget the insults he endured before he attained the consulship. Perhaps he also felt that the popular party ought to grasp the reins of power, since the conservative party was now discredited[2] by reason of the fact that[3] so many of their leaders had taken bribes from Iugurtha to ensure their inactivity. But whether he thought thus or whether he was merely ambitious, the fact remains that Marius was re-elected to the consulship seven times within the space of twenty years. But Marius was not the man to reorganize the Roman state, and after many mistakes he at last filled a dishonoured grave.[4]

Exercise 131

Sense of fairness. Animi aequitas.

Another statesman worthy of mention is Livius Drusus, a noble who upheld the cause of the distressed commons. Drusus was a man of the highest

[1] Say, become a private citizen (privatus).
[2] in suspicionem venire.
[3] quod.
[4] Say, he went out of life, dishonoured (vita excedere).

ability and uprightness but he did not possess the arts which win popularity. His sense of fairness led him[1] to propose a bill whereby Roman citizenship was to be conferred on the Italian allies who were, with reason, discontented[2] with their lot. The allies complained that they furnished Rome with troops in her wars but that they were not permitted to enjoy the privileges of Roman citizenship. This bill was bitterly opposed by the Senate nor was it popular with the people, who feared that they would have to share some of the gifts of politicians with the allies. Drusus met the fate of his predecessors.

Exercise 132

Military resources. Opes et copiae belli.

The result of the murder of Drusus[3] was that the allies broke out into open revolt. The fighting was exceptionally bitter, and Rome, though using all her resources, could not finish the war in less than two years. This war is memorable because the allies tried to establish the capital of Italy at Corfinium in Umbria. But the allies could not accomplish what Hannibal had failed to do, and Rome emerged from the war[4] still unconquered. Nevertheless the revolt of the allies so frightened the senators that the allies received some of the privileges for which they had been fighting.

[1] Say, induced by his sense of fairness he proposed. . . .
[2] by no means contented.
[3] Omit 'the result was.' Use Ablative Absolute.
[4] Say, when the war was at last finished.

Exercise 133

It is universally admitted. Inter omnes constat.

It was now universally admitted that there were many things in the life of Rome which were likely to prove harmful to the state. The senators had not seized the opportunity offered them by the death of Gracchus. They had proved selfish and venal in the war with Iugurtha and many were anxious to secure private gain rather than to work for the common good. Moreover by resorting to[1] violence against[2] their political opponents they had opened the door to reprisals.[3] Thus it was that when the consuls sought to prevent a tribune, Sulpicius Rufus, from bringing forward a bill designed to improve the status of the allies, he led armed gangs of gladiators into the forum and compelled the consuls to seek safety in flight.

Exercise 134

To enter upon a consulship. Consulatum inire.

It should not be surprising that the rioting in the capital was soon followed by civil war. Here the senate found a champion in L. Cornelius Sulla who had been lieutenant-general under Marius in Africa. Marius by this time was not in favour even with[4] his own party but he was still influential enough[5] to persuade the people to appoint him to the command against Mithridates

[1] descendere ad. [2] Use in + Abl.
[3] Say, they had stirred up the commons to employ similar measures.
[4] apud. [5] Use 'satis auctoritatis habere.'

although the Senate had entrusted the war to Sulla. But Sulla was not the man to be thus set aside. He marched on Rome at the head of the legions of the East and compelled Marius to flee. Sulla then proceeded to Asia but, in his absence a certain Cinna recalled Marius from Africa whither he had fled. These two men then appointed themselves consuls. Marius however died soon after his assumption of office. During the regime of Cinna and Marius many senators were ruthlessly murdered by their commands.

Exercise 135

To restore the position of Rome. Rem Romanam restituere.

A little while after the death of Marius, Sulla was named dictator. As has been said he was a man of high ability but he was stupid enough to imagine that, by legislative enactment,[1] he could restore the position of Rome. He did not realize that the well-being of a community[2] depends upon the character of its governors as much as[3] upon the constitution. Thus in restoring all power to the senate he was placing political power[4] in the hands of[5] a corrupt and selfish minority[6] who would be likely to govern solely in their own interests. Moreover nothing could make the people forget that armed force had been used by political leaders and nothing which he did was of a kind to bring in that era of peace[7] and quietness which the state needed.

[1] ferendis legibus. [2] communis salus. [3] use aeque ac.
[4] auctoritas et potestas. [5] penes (*acc.*). [6] 'few.'
[7] pax et tranquillitas.

Exercise 136

The Sullan regime.	Tempus Sullanum.
Members of the democratic party.	Ii qui partibus popularibus favent.

But another danger soon threatened the state. Many members of the democratic party had fled to Spain to escape the rigours of the Sullan regime. Once established in their new homes they felt themselves strong enough to risk a conflict[1] and so, under the courageous and skilful leadership of Sertorius, a rebellion broke out which was not quelled for three years. It is worthy of mention that, in this campaign an opportunity was afforded to Gnaeus Pompeius to show his military capacity.[2] The high command in Spain was entrusted to Pompeius who was only thirty years of age. After conquering Sertorius he was looked upon as the most powerful man in the state. Joining the democratic party on his return to Rome, he was soon elected consul with Marcus Crassus for his colleague. Their first act was to repeal the legislation of Sulla.

Exercise 137

To depart this life.	E vita excedere.
To possess more initiative.	Conatu plus valere.

Pompeius was now the most influential man in the state because he was thought to be the best general. In order to maintain this ascendancy,[3] however, it was necessary for him to be appointed to tasks[4] for the performance of which forces were necessary, since a general has little power without an army at his back. Hence it was that Pompeius succeeded in obtaining the command against the pirates and, when this task was completed more quickly than men thought possible, the command against Mithridates, who had not yet been subdued, though often defeated. Indeed so obstinate a foe had he proved that it seemed that the danger he caused Rome would only vanish when he departed this life. Moreover he possessed more initiative than other oriental kings and had greatly alarmed the Romans by making an alliance with Sertorius.

[1] fortunam tentare.
[2] Say, what he could do in war.
[3] auctoritas.
[4] Say, 'such tasks as.'

Exercise 138

A reserve of gallant gentlemen. Virorum fortium copia.

The speech which Cicero made to the people in support of the proposal to give this command to Pompeius has come down to us. The seriousness of the campaign is emphasized and the ability of Pompeius is lauded to the skies.[1] "Would that the state" he says, "possessed an inexhaustible reserve of gallant gentlemen so that the choice between them would be difficult. But this is not the case. Pompeius alone stands out as a supremely capable general. Whatever task has been entrusted to him he has accomplished. The whole world is witness of his prowess. How fortunate, then, is the Roman state to possess a citizen who combines[2] modesty and honourable behaviour with consummate skill as a commander."

[1] Make Cicero subject and turn into active.
[2] Say, to whom is both . . . and.

Exercise 139

The ladder of office. Honoris gradus.

But while Pompeius was absent in Asia, where he remained for five years, a far abler man was mounting the ladder of office in Rome. Julius Caesar, born of a noble family, a relation by marriage of the famous Marius, had won the favour of the crowd as much by his affability as by his boundless generosity.

When Pompeius returned from the East Caesar was quick to realize that the senatorial party feared that Pompeius would not be content to lay down his power. Moreover Pompeius plainly showed that he regarded himself as indispensable to the republic. Caesar, knowing that he was not yet strong enough to supplant Pompeius, proposed an alliance with him. It was agreed that Caesar should be a candidate for the consulship and that, when consul, he should secure the ratification of Pompey's measures in Asia.

PART THREE

QUOMINUS AND QUIN

Rule 51. Verbs of preventing and hindering with a negative, virtual negative or interrogative, introduce a quominus or quin clause with its verb in the Subjunctive mood.

Nothing hindered you from going away.
Nihil tibi obstitit quominus abires.

We shall scarcely prevent them from singing.
Vix eos impediemus quin canant.

What hindered us from going?
Quid nos impedivit quin / quominus iremus?

Obs. 1. When these verbs are affirmative, ne is generally used, though quominus is permissible.

Obs. 2. Quominus = ut eo minus, and the clause it introduces is a special example of a clause of purpose containing a comparative. Quin = qui ne, qui being an old neuter ablative of the relative.

Obs. 3. Prohibeo prefers the infinitive.

Obs. 4. A virtual negative is such a word as vix, aegre, sine, or a question expecting an answer in the negative.

Obs. 5. An idiomatic use of quominus should be noticed.
It is Caesar's fault that the Helvetii are not defeated.
Per Caesarem stat quominus Helvetii vincantur.

Exercise 140

He keeps his word. Fidem praestat.

1. Caesar was hindered by the river from overtaking the Gauls.
2. Age does not hinder us from enjoying the games.
3. My respect for Pompeius prevents me from supporting Caesar.
4. It was your fault that the Gauls took the city.
5. I kept my son at home to prevent him from going to the games.

6. Catiline was with difficulty prevented from burning the city.
7. His fear of Caesar prevented him from keeping his word.
8. With difficulty Caesar restrained the soldiers from butchering the inhabitants.
9. Trebonius was, possibly, the cause of our not taking the town.
10. My indifferent health prevented me from attending the games.

Exercise 141

To submit to the sway.	Esse sub dicione.
To organize the defence.	Parare omnia ad propulsandum hostem.
All these soldiers.	Hi tot milites.
Enter political life.	Ad rempublicam se conferre.

1. Nothing hindered us from attacking the Helvetii as they were crossing the river.
2. Hardly were the infuriated soldiers restrained from inflicting punishment upon the spies.
3. Why did you endeavour to hinder him from standing for the consulship?
4. I shall not object to asking for your assistance.
5. All these soldiers could not prevent a woman from persuading the general to make peace.
6. Nothing now prevents us from entering political life.
7. Will you refuse to send your best soldiers?
8. Do not seek to prevent Pompeius from organizing the defence.
9. You will never frighten me from saying these things.
10. They did not refuse submission to the sway of Rome.

QUIN—(*Continued*)

A. Quin = qui (abl.) ne.

Note. *In all the undermentioned uses quin is joined with the Subjunctive.*

Rule 52. Quin is used to translate that after verbs and phrases expressing doubt, when they are negative, virtually negative or interrogative.

There is no doubt that Caesar conquered the Gauls.
Non est dubium quin Caesar Gallos vicerit.
Who doubts that Crassus favours Catiline?
Quis dubitat quin Crassus Catilinae faveat.

Quin is used after many negative phrases.

Examples:

It cannot be but that. / *It is impossible that . . . not.*	fieri non potest quin.[1]
I cannot but.	facere non possum quin.[1]
To be very near.	*minimum abesse quin.
Not to be far from.	*haud multum abesse quin.
What reason is there against?	quid causae est quin?

*Both phrases are always used *impersonally* in Latin.

B. Quin = Qui, quae, quod, -ne.

Rule 53. Quin is also used after a negative or interrogative principal clause to make a statement to which there is no exception, quin being equivalent to qui (nominative) -ne.

All the world believes that he is good.
Nemo est quin credat eum esse bonum.
There is nothing too difficult to accomplish.
Nil est tam difficile quin perfici possit.

Note. Quin may often be used to translate English *'without.'*
I cannot do without sending you a letter daily.
Facere non possum quin cotidie ad te litteras mittam.

[1] In these phrases 'non' must be written immediately before 'posse.'

Exercise 142

To fail someone. Deficere ab.

1. There is no doubt that Marius failed Saturninus.
2. Our army was not far from total extinction on that day.
3. It is quite impossible that Caesar is not wrong.
4. I cannot but reveal my opinion if you ask it.
5. The enemy came within an ace of taking the town.
6. What reason was there against the arrest of Catiline?
7. No one could doubt that Caesar's intention was to fight with Pompeius.
8. It could in no wise happen that Brutus would not be spared.
9. Caesar came near to destroying the state.
10. What reason is there for supposing that he will not return?

Exercise 143

The moon moves. Luna movetur.[1]

1. There is no one who does not know that the Gauls once captured Rome.
2. There was nothing that Caesar could not do.
3. All the world admired a man of such dignity.
4. Everyone is aware that the moon moves round the earth.

[1] Transitive verbs in Latin should not be used intransitively, hence 'movetur' (passive).

5. It is impossible to prevent the Germans from crossing the Rhine.
6. There is no mountain too high to be climbed.
7. Nothing will change Caesar's plan of setting out to-morrow.
8. We cannot help appealing to you for help.
9. Surely no one in this audience believes that Catiline will not carry out his intentions?
10. I cannot refrain from expressing my disagreement with this opinion.

Exercise 144

To inflict punishment on. Supplicium sumere de.[1]
A consummate general. Dux rei militaris peritissimus.
To take a step (fig.) Haec facere.

1. There is no question of Caesar's ability to defeat Pompeius.
2. The question of our willingness to assist our friends does not arise.[2]
3. What reason is there against his keeping his word?
4. He admitted that he could not help admiring so consummate a general.
5. Who doubts the wisdom of the step we are taking?
6. There is no shadow of doubt that Marius is dead.
7. There is no doubt in my mind[3] that the legions will not come.
8. I make no doubt that Ariovistus will inflict the severest punishment on the hostages.
9. Let us never hesitate[4] to give obedience to the laws of our country.
10. There is nothing wanting to make me successful.

[1] generally used of the supreme penalty. [3] omit.
[2] Use 'non dubitandum est.'
[4] dubitare. (In this meaning dubitare may be followed by quin or by the infinitive.)

Exercise 145

The conservative party. Optimates.
The popular party. Populares.
To allow a day to pass. Diem intermittere.

1. I never saw him without wishing to speak to him.
2. Expediency should not hinder a man from doing his duty.
3. It was the fault of the conservatives that the people were dying of hunger.
4. It cannot be denied that Ariovistus imposed many burdens upon the Sequani.
5. There is no lack of ground for suspicion (say suspicion is not absent) that Orgetorix killed himself.
6. So far I have allowed no day to pass without making a speech before the people.
7. It cannot be denied[1] that the popular party supported Caesar.
8. I cannot do without receiving news of you.
9. There was nothing wanting to make Sulla perfectly happy.
10. Caesar's forces were within a hair's breadth of total annihilation.

Exercise 146

In these perilous times. In hoc tam periculoso tempore.
He failed me in my hour of need. Tempori meo defuit.

1. We cannot help fearing an invasion in such force.
2. He never spoke without abusing the Carthaginians.

[1] Negari quin.

3. In these perilous times there is hardly a citizen of Rome but carries weapons for self-defence.

4. There was not a man among those I called my friends but failed me in my hour of need.

5. We are almost dead with weariness. (Use minime abest.)

6. Who doubted that Caesar could force Afranius to a decisive battle?

7. The Britons did not let a day pass without seeking to cut off some of our cavalry from the camp.

8. In no wise is it possible to prevent Clodius from inciting the people against the conservatives.

9. What reason is there against exacting the supreme penalty from Catiline's followers?

10. All the world believes that homicide is sometimes justifiable.

Exercise 147

To provide with an opportunity.	Occasionem praebere (dat.).
Experience in war.	Rei militaris usus.

Caesar's consulship added greatly to his popularity and influence, nor was there any one who did not now realize that he might one day challenge[1] the great Pompeius. But Caesar was hindered in the prosecution of

[1] Use par esse with dat.

his plans by the fact that he had no great experience in war.

But by some means Caesar compelled Pompeius to agree that he should be appointed governor[1] of Gaul. No one knows whether Pompeius understood Caesar's object, but there is little doubt that Caesar knew that his appointment would provide him with the opportunity of training an army and of learning the art of generalship.

Exercise 148

To come within an ace of. Haud multum abesse quin (impersonal).

Certain authorities say that as Caesar was journeying to Gaul he read carefully some Greek manuals on the theory and practice of warfare. Whether this be true or no is uncertain, but there is no room for doubt that in his first engagement with the Helvetii he came within an ace of being defeated. But it is also true that he quickly learned all that was necessary to enable him to cope with his barbarian enemies. Moreover he taught his soldiers—and this surely is the most valuable lesson[2] an army can learn—that there is nothing too dangerous or too difficult for brave men to accomplish. A general who could thus inspire his troops with confidence in himself could not help proving successful.

[1] obtinere provinciam. [2] Id quod.

EXERCISES FOR REVISION

Exercise 149

To engage in close combat.	Manūs conserere.
To be conspicuous.	Exsistere.
To keep one's head.	Satis impauidus in re trepida esse.

The qualities of Caesar as a commander were conspicuous in many an engagement, but never did he display greater courage than in a battle fought against the Nervii.

Through the treachery of certain surrendered Belgae the Nervii had been informed of Caesar's plans, and had laid an ambush in woods which overlooked the place chosen for a camp. When the legions arrived and were engaged in the work of entrenchment the enemy dashed out in full force. They quickly routed the few cavalry who opposed them, and with incredible speed were at close quarters with the legions. So sudden was the onset that the Romans were almost overwhelmed. But in the midst of the greatest confusion Caesar kept his head, and though the nearness of the enemy prevented him from deploying his forces to the best advantage, they quickly offered some semblance of defence.[1]

[1] The appearance of defenders.

Exercise 150

To turn in favour of.	Inclinare ad.
Within range.	Ad teli coniectum.

While it cannot be denied that the discipline and experience of the soldiers was of great service at so critical a time, an equal share of praise must be given to Caesar.[1] He seemed to be everywhere at the one time. First he exhorted the tenth legion to remember their former valour and bravely to withstand the enemy's onslaught. Then since the enemy was now come within range he gave the signal for battle and set off for another part of the line. At first everything turned in favour of the Romans. The soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions routed the Aduatuci opposed to them and drove them headlong. The Viromandui also, who engaged the eighth and eleventh legions were broken and fled in disorder. But the Romans were over eager in pursuit of the beaten enemy, and thus left exposed the front and left flank of the camp.[2]

[1] use eadem laude afficere.

[2] Say, in front and on . . . the camp was left uncovered.

Exercise 151

To be in supreme command. Summam imperii tenere.

To make contact with (the enemy). Occurrere (dat.).

Boduognatus, leader of the Nervii, who was in supreme command, was not the man to miss the opportunity thus offered. He therefore sent the Nervii in a dense column to seize the position and to work round the exposed flank of the twelfth and seventh legions who were still in their original position. By this manoeuvre[1] the Nervii made contact with our cavalry, who had fled at the first onset. Routing these with ease, they entered the camp just at the moment when the baggage train was coming up. Then arose a mighty confusion and shouting, with panic-stricken men rushing in all directions. But Caesar had now reached the twelfth legion, where he beheld his men hard driven and so huddled together[2] that the soldiers could not use their swords for fear of wounding a comrade.

[1] hoc modo. [2] Confertus -a -um.

Exercise 152

To take open order. Manipulos laxare.

To do one's utmost. Operam navare.

Many other circumstances increased the danger. Nearly all the centurions were killed or wounded and some men of the rear rank were beginning to withdraw. But Caesar seized a shield from a soldier in the rear rank and went forward into the first line. Calling on the centurions by name and encouraging the rank and file he ordered the men to advance and to take open order, so that they would not hinder one another in fighting. Caesar's arrival brought hope to the soldiers and revived their spirits,[1] and though everyone recognized how desperate his position was, yet being in sight[2] of the commander-in-chief he desired to do his utmost and so it happened that even the wounded, propping themselves upon their shields tried to lend a hand.[3] On the return of the tenth legion under T. Labienus the Nervii were put to flight.

[1] Use 'animos reficere.' [2] in oculis. [3] Think of the sense!

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Rule 54. The following temporal Conjunctions are followed by the Indicative.

when	ubi	*while*	dum
after / *after that*	postquam	*until*	dum, donec
		up to the time that	quoad
as soon as the first moment that	simul ac (atque) / ut primum or ubi primum.	*as long as*	quamdiu
		before / *before that*	ante quam or prius quam
		as often as	quotiens

Obs. 1. For dum, donec, antequam and priusquam with the Subjunctive see Rules 60, 61.

Obs. 2. The verbs in these time clauses will be in the Subjunctive in reported speech.

Example:

When the Helvetii heard of his approach they sent ambassadors.

Ubi Helvetii de eius adventu audiverunt legatos miserunt.

Caesar said that when the Helvetii heard of his approach they sent ambassadors.

Caesar dixit Helvetios ubi de suo adventu audivissent, misisse legatos.

Rule 55. After ut primum, ubi primum and postquam the Perfect Tense is generally used even though the action actually precedes that of the main verb.

Example:

After he had come the slaves departed.

Postquam venit, servi discesserunt.

Obs. 1. But the Pluperfect may be used after *postquam*, especially when the time after which the action of the main verb occurs, is specified.

Example:

Three years after he returned to Rome he died.

Tribus post annis quam redierat Romam mortuus est.

Note. The following scheme sets out the normal tense usage with Temporal conjunctions.

As often as he fights he is conquered.
Quotiens pugnavit vincitur.

As often as he fought he was conquered.
Quotiens pugnaverat victus est.

As often as he fights he will be conquered.
Quotiens pugnaverit vincetur.

Exercise 153

desino = to cease
flagito = to ask for
once

To give judgment. Ius dicere.

1. After the praetor had given judgment the defendant wept.

2. As soon as Cassivellaunus saw our cavalry he let loose his charioteers upon them.

3. As often as you speak on behalf of the conservatives I shall address the popular party.

4. As soon as he could stifle his weeping and begin to speak he asked for his friend.

5. Ten years after the Carthaginians had evacuated Italy the temples were all rebuilt.

6. At the first moment the elephants appeared there was a panic in the Roman ranks.

7. Three months after he became consul there was a sudden uprising in Gaul.

8. As often as he comes to dinner he tells the same story.

9. After he had reached the river Metaurus, Nero led his men into the consul's camp.

10. Caesar told the Helvetii to give back the prisoners they had taken.

Exercise 154

No sooner . . . than. Ubi primum.

1. No sooner had he captured the town than he determined to march on.

2. We will not surrender the town until we have heard that Caesar cannot rescue us.

3. As long as you can hold out there is hope that help will come.

4. As often as he addressed the people he displayed his folly.

5. Twenty years after the pacification of Gaul the tribes again entered into a conspiracy against Rome.

6. When we arrive in Rome the consuls will hold a levy.

7. After all these soldiers have plundered the town there will not be much left.

8. As long as the Romans respected the traditions of their ancestors they were strong.

9. No sooner had he arrived than it happened that Clodius caused a riot.

10. One of us waited until the moon rose.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

CUM—When

Rule 56. **When cum 'when' is used merely to define the Time of the action of the main verb it is followed by an Indicative.**

Example:

(a) ***When you speak I shall answer.***
Cum locutus eris respondebo.

(b) ***When Caesar was a young man Sulla defeated Marius.***
Cum Caesar erat adolescens Sulla Marium vicit.

Obs. 1. Cum, 'when,' with the Indicative, dependent on a main verb in a past tense is rare.

Obs. 2. When cum means *whenever*, i.e. when it implies frequent or repeated action in present or past time, it is followed by the Indicative.

Example:

Whenever he dines at home he eats vegetables.
Cum domi cenat holeribus vescitur.

Whenever our men rushed out over the countryside, he used to send out charioteers.
Cum nostri se in agros eiecerant essedarios emittebat.

Rule 57. **When a cum clause, dependent on a main verb in a past tense, describes the circumstances in the midst of which or on account of which the action of the main verb takes place, the verb in the cum clause is always in the subjunctive.**

(a) ***When I was at Athens I listened to great men.***
Cum Athenis essem audivi summos homines.

(b) ***When Caesar arrived in camp the soldiers fought more bravely.***
Cum Caesar in castra pervenisset, milites fortius pugnaverunt.

(c) ***When Cicero said this there was an outcry.***
Cum Cicero haec dixisset conclamatum est.

Exercise 155

To be a candidate for the consulship. Consulatum petere.

1. When we were living in Rome many famous men were killed.
2. Having run to the Capitol we entered the temple of Iuppiter.
3. Whenever a skilled orator addressed the Senate there was silence.
4. There was an uproar in the camp when Caesar departed.
5. Day was beginning to dawn when the consul gave the signal to advance.
6. As Pompeius was stepping ashore at Alexandria he was murdered.
7. Marius fled from Rome after being seven times consul.
8. When the summer came to an end the legions were withdrawn into winter quarters.
9. Summer was already ended when the legions were brought back to our province.
10. When Murena was a candidate for the consulship Cicero aided Sulpicius.

conficio }
perficio } to finish

Exercise 156

To offer battle. Ad pugnam provocare.[1]

1. Since these things are so, we ought never to have failed our leader.

2. The general, seeing that the soldiers were wearied, withdrew them from the battle.

3. And this they were already preparing to do when suddenly the women ran in a body to Caesar.

4. When I was beset by enemies on every hand you failed me in my time of need.

5. When he had reached his destination he visited all the winter quarters.

6. Having returned to his followers Vercingetorix was accused of treachery.

7. The troops were furious because the signal was not given when the enemy offered battle.

8. When he noticed that the troops were in distress he sent four hundred German horse to their aid.

9. The tower was almost touching the enemy's wall when the ramp was observed to be smoking.

10. Coming to the camp he noticed that the hill overhanging the road was undefended.

[1] *provocare* is transitive.

SUMMARY OF USES OF CUM

(1) Temporal. Cum—when. Mood—Indicative.

When Caesar comes I shall greet him.
Cum Caesar venerit eum salutabo.

(2) Circumstantial. Mood—Subjunctive.

(a) Cum—when, as, introduces a clause setting out the circumstances in the midst of which or on account of which the action of the main verb took place.

When Caesar had occupied Ancona, we left the city.
Cum Caesar Anconam occupavisset urbem reliquimus.

(b) Cum—since, introduces a causal clause. Subjunctive mood.

Since these things are so I shall go away.
Quae cum ita sint abibo.

(c) Cum—although, introduces a concessive clause. Subjunctive mood. (The main clause is often introduced by tamen.)

Although Caesar was clever he did not become king.
Cum Caesar esset callidus tamen rex non est factus.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

DUM—While

Consider the English:

(a) While he was speaking I left the meeting.
(b) While he was speaking all held their peace.

There is an important distinction between these two sentences for the writer of Latin prose.

In (a) the time taken in 'going away' is obviously only part of the time occupied in 'speaking.' in (b) both actions occupy the same length of time. In Latin the Indicative Present is always used in the subordinate clause of type (a) whatever the tense of the English verb.

Rule 58. **When the action of the verb in the dum-clause occupies a longer period of time than the action of the main clause verb, the verb in the dum-clause is in the Present Indicative.**

Obs. The present indicative after 'dum' is usually retained even in indirect speech.

Rule 59. **When dum is equivalent to 'as long as,' and refers only to Time, it will be followed by the Indicative mood and will be in whatever tense the sense requires.**

Example:
(a) **Dum loquitur, e contione discessi.**
but
(b) **Dum loquebatur omnes conticescebant.**

DUM, DONEC—Until

Rule 60. **Dum, until, implying Time and Time only is followed by the Indicative, but when it is implied that the action of the verb in the dum-clause is purposely awaited the verb must be put in the Subjunctive.**

Example:
(a) Time: ***I shall wait till he comes.***
Manebo dum (donec) veniet.
(b) Purpose: ***They waited until Caesar should set out.***
Manserunt dum Caesar proficisceretur.
They determined to fight until the enemy should surrender.
Pugnare constituerunt dum hostes se dederent.

Obs. 1. Donec is rare in sentences of type (b).

Obs. 2. The context will be a guide to the purposive character of the main sentence but often, also, the English of the subordinate sentence will contain a subjunctive.

ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM

Rule 61. **Antequam and priusquam are also followed by a Subjunctive when purpose is implied, or the prevention of a result.**

Example:
Our men charged before the Helvetii could draw up their line.
(i.e. *to prevent them doing so.*)
Nostri impetum prius fecerunt quam Helvetii aciem instruerent.

Obs. 'ante' and 'prius' are generally placed near the verb in the main clause while 'quam' introduces the dependent clause.

Exercise 157

Night intervened (and,) . . . Nocte intermissa.

1. While these operations were being conducted near Gergovia the Aedui revolted.

2. While he was travelling from Veii to Rome he read a book.

3. I cannot come until a letter arrives from Atticus.

4. He judged it to be the height of madness to wait until the enemy's forces should be reinforced by the cavalry.

5. Caesar decided that he must not wait until the Helvetii, having wasted the substance of the allies, should penetrate into the territory of the Santones.

6. While this was happening news came to our general that the ships had been shattered in a storm.

7. While the hostages were being collected night intervened and about 6,000 men marched away to the Rhine.

8. While Rome was strong the provinces were protected against the barbarians.

9. Until Caesar bids me depart I shall remain in the town he ordered me to hold.

10. May the garrison hold[1] the town until Caesar comes.

[1] Wishes for the future are expressed by the present subjunctive.

Exercise 158

Try every ruse. Omnia experiri.

1. Hannibal tried every ruse before withdrawing from the fight.

2. I waited to be asked my opinion before I spoke.

3. Caesar fortified the hill before he could be perceived by the enemy.

4. Let us wait until we hear whether Murena has been acquitted.

5. Before the consul could read the law the fighting started.

6. Before the scouts returned Caesar had formed his plan.

7. Cicero was unwilling to defend Murena after supporting Sulpicius.

8. I will not do anything until I have asked Caesar's advice.

9. He refused to act until he could consult Caesar.

10. Your brother, a man of the highest talent, died before he could prove of service to the state.

ineo - ire - ivi - itum — to enter upon
intro - intrare - avi - atum — to enter
introeo — to enter
ingredior — to enter.

Exercise 159

The extreme section. Abiecti homines et perditi.

While Pompeius was engaged in the settlement of affairs in Asia, party strife was rampant[1] in Rome, since all parties were eager to increase their power before Pompeius returned. A profligate noble, Lucius Sergius Catilina, became the leader of the extreme section. After his return from Africa, where he had been praetor, he was a candidate for the consulship, but was obliged to withdraw because of an indictment for extortion in his province. As soon as an opportunity presented itself, he formed a plot to murder the new consuls on the occasion of their assumption of office on January 1st, and to seize the consular power for himself and Autronius, an associate in the conspiracy. The design became known, and a subsequent plot, a month later, was frustrated by the impatience[2] of Catiline, who gave the signal before his supporters had rallied in sufficient numbers. It was generally recognized that Catiline was guilty of treason, but no one dared to bring him to trial at a time when there were so many malcontents in the state.

Exercise 160

To be heavily in debt. Aere alieno opprimi

Up to the time of the consulship of Cicero, two years later, Catiline's designs were unchecked. He was a candidate for the consulship in the same year as Cicero, and the winning of office was a matter of supreme importance for Catiline. He was heavily in debt, and hoped to secure a rich province after his term of office was

[1] Use exardesco, -ere, -arsi, -arsum.
[2] Say, who did not know how (nesciit) to bear delay.

over. He allied himself with Antonius, a weak and corrupt noble, and by recourse[1] to bribery and intrigue entertained high hope of success, until Cicero in a powerful speech in the senate, made it clear to the optimates that their own safety was being violently threatened.[2] The election resulted in the victory of Cicero and Antonius, and Cicero made his own position more secure[3] by surrendering to his colleague the rich province of Macedonia. Thus as often as Catiline had sought the consulship he had been unsuccessful, yet he persisted in renewing his candidature yet again.[4]

Exercise 161

To be sympathetic towards. Inclinare ad.

At this time many of the younger nobility were without principle and without fortune; a large section[5] of the populace was restless and discontented, and the members of the democratic party were not wholly unsympathetic towards schemes that tended to check the growing power of Pompeius. It was probably due to these circumstances that the conspiracy formed by Catiline, in the year of Cicero's consulship, obtained widespread support. Catiline, however, had first to secure election as consul. He was foiled by Cicero who, all the time that Catiline had been perfecting his arrangements, had been receiving information concerning the plot, and on the day of the election appeared in the Campus Martius with a cuirass under his toga and with the protection of a strong bodyguard. Catiline's supporters were overawed and Silanus and Murena were elected.

[1] Utor. [2] Say, the greatest danger threatened (impendere) . . .
[3] Say, strengthened his position (opes confirmare).
[4] etiam rursus. [5] Magna pars.

Exercise 162

A campaign of open violence. Rem gerere vi et armis.

Catiline immediately decided on a campaign of open violence, and Manlius was instructed to raise the standard of revolt[1] in Etruria. On the next day the consul and the leading optimates were to be murdered in Rome. Cicero was fully cognisant of all details[2] of the plot. When the report came of the insurrection of Manlius in Etruria and of slave risings in Capua and Apulia the senate was roused to action, and Catiline was forced to leave the city. Cicero anticipated[3] every move on the part of Catiline and his associates, but it was not until he had written evidence that he arranged for the arrest of the conspirators whom Catiline had left to carry out the programme of revolution in Rome. After a debate in the senate the prisoners were condemned to death. The legality of this sentence has been much questioned.

Catiline himself fell in battle, and his forces were annihilated at the battle of Pistoria, after they had fought with a desperate courage which was worthy of a better cause.

Exercise 163

To banish. In exsilium pellere.

Cicero's vigorous action[4] in suppressing the Catilinarian conspiracy had increased his own reputation and that of the senate. Both Pompeius and Caesar feared Cato's obstinacy and Cicero's eloquence, and perhaps

[1] Commovere seditionem. [2] Omnia.
[3] Use 'praesentire et praevenire'?
[4] Say, what things Cicero did so vigorously.

this was the reason for their coalition.[1] Caesar, however, in his consulship, succeeded in passing his agrarian law in the face of the senate's opposition, and as a consequence the popular party was once more in the ascendant. Caesar made many attempts to win Cicero over to his side,[2] but the latter believed that it was still possible to save the republican constitution, and he rejected all Caesar's proposals. Caesar was very angry at this, and he allowed his creature Clodius, when tribune of the people to pass a bill whereby Cicero was banished.

Exercise 164

Demagogues. Turbulenti cives et vulgi turbatores.

Clodius, a handsome young man of dissolute character, had hated Cicero from the time when the latter had given evidence against him on the occasion of his trial for violating the mysteries of the Bona Dea. Born of a noble family, he was debarred by his birth[3] from becoming tribune of the people, which office he greatly desired. He therefore arranged to be adopted into a plebeian family, and thus made himself eligible for the office. Once tribune he soon became a leader among the demagogues. Moreover, he did not shrink from[4] furthering his plans by resorting to violence, and organised a gang of gladiators, who under his direction attacked his enemies in the streets. And so through the agency of Clodius, Rome was in a state of continual turmoil[5] until he too met his death at the hands of Milo.

[1] Use inter se coniungere. [2] ad suas partes traducere.
[3] quam ob rem. [4] Quin.
[5] Say, great disturbances (motus) occurred in the city.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

The Conditional sentence consists of two clauses—an If-Clause and a Then-Clause.

e.g. If fruit is plentiful, then it is cheap.

Note 1. The If-Clause is called the Protasis, the Then-Clause, the Apodosis. Grammatically the Then-Clause is the main clause.

Note 2. The word 'then' is usually suppressed in the Apodosis.

From the above example it is obvious that Conditional sentences belong to the world of Thought, not to the world of Fact.

But the different types of Conditional sentences may be distinguished from one another by their nearness to, or remoteness from, Fact.

Let us consider Conditions near to Fact. They may be either Present, Past or Future.

	(1) If you do that	you do wrong.
A.	(2) If you did that	you did wrong.
	(3) If you do that	you will do wrong.

Here an attempt is made to get as near to Fact as possible. The conclusions 'you do wrong,' 'you did wrong,' 'you will do wrong' are stated as definitely as they would be if there were no antecedent condition.

Now consider conditions remote from Fact (Present, Past and Future).

B.

(1) If you were doing that you would be doing / do } wrong.

(2) If you had done that you would have done wrong.

Here we are completely out of touch with Fact. The facts are that 'you are *not* doing that' *now* and 'you did *not* do that' *in the past.*

Consider too:

(3) If you were to do that you would do / be doing } wrong.

Here the fact is that 'you are not doing that' but it is the speaker's fancy that you *may* do it at some *undefined time to come.*

Conditional Sentences of Type A.

(1) and (2) may be called Open or Universal Conditions.
(3) may be called Definite Future Conditions.

Conditional Sentences of Type B.

(1) may be called Impossible Conditions (Present Time).
(2) may be called Impossible Conditions (Past Time).
(3) may be called Indefinite Future or Ideal Conditions.

Obs. In deciding the type of Condition study the Apodosis **first.**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—(*Continued*)

Conditional Sentences of Type A. require *Indicative* Mood in both clauses.

Conditional Sentences of Type B. require *Subjunctive* Mood in both clauses.

Mood.	Type.	Protasis.	Apodosis.	Tense in both clauses.
INDICATIVE.	Universal Present.	(1) Si hoc facis If you do this	peccas. you do wrong	Present
	Universal Past.	(2) Si hoc fecisti If you did this	peccavisti you did wrong	Perfect
	Definite Future.	(3) Si hoc facies If you do this	peccabis you will do wrong	Future
SUBJUNCTIVE	Impossible Present.	(1) Si hoc faceres If you were doing this	peccares you would do } wrong be doing }	Imperfect
	Impossible Past.	(2) Si hoc fecisses If you had done this	peccavisses you would have done wrong	Pluperfect
	Indefinite Future.	(3) Si hoc facias If you were to do this	pecces you would do wrong	Present

Obs. In Definite Future Conditions the Future Indicative, Simple or Perfect, must be used in the Protasis as well as the Apodosis.

Exercise 168

To pay the penalty. Poenas solvere.
To be guilty. In culpa esse.

1. If you gave that answer you did right.
2. If I should do that it would be of no benefit to you.
3. Had you committed that crime you would have paid the penalty ere this.
4. I am ready to pay the penalty if you prove my guilt.
5. If Rome were to be besieged the citizens would never surrender.
6. No German would have escaped if Caesar had been in command of this army.
7. If Marius gives the signal the soldiers will charge.
8. Were I to break this promise I should be for ever dishonoured.
9. If you fail to keep your promises, who will believe you?
10. If you came to my house, you saw Tullius.

Exercise 169

Wealth and position. Divitiae dignitatesque.

1. You would have been better informed if you had heard Cicero's speech.
2. If any one of them was applauded he feared that he had done something[1] wrong.
3. If we should learn to despise wealth and position we should be the happier.
4. Had Hannibal taken the other route he might have saved Capua.
5. If to-day we rout the foe we will vow a temple to Iuppiter.
6. If he had money he would (i.e., used to) lend it.
7. If he had the money he would lend it.
8. If a man has broken the laws he can be justly punished.
9. If only Cicero had spoken on Milo's behalf he would not have been banished.
10. I should never have gone with you had I known your intentions.

[1] omit.

CONDITIONALS—(*Continued*)

Obs. 1. The Apodosis may take the form of a command or wish.

Example:

Veni cras, si poteris.	*Come to-morrow, if you can.*
Ne veneris, nisi iussero.	*Do not come unless I tell you.*
Si veniunt, sint felices.	*May they be successful, if they come.*

Obs. 2. Use (a) sive (seu) . . . sive (seu) for a double condition.
(b) Nisi (if not, unless) to negative a whole clause.
(c) Si non where the negative applies to a single word in a clause.
(d) sin (but if) to introduce a condition excluding a previous condition expressed or implied.

Obs. 3. The tense is usually the same in the protasis and apodosis but consider the following:—

If you had done this, you would now be happy. The protasis refers to past time (therefore use pluperfect subj.), while the apodosis refers to present time (therefore use imperfect subj.).

Si hoc fecisses, nunc esses felix.

Obs. 4. In impossible conditions, if the verb of the apodosis is posse, debere, oportet or a gerundive or any verb expressing obligation or possibility (e.g. melius fuit, it would be better) it is usually put in the Indicative.

Examples:
(*a*) Si fratrem necavisset, ipse interficiendus erat. *If he had killed his brother, he ought to have been put to death.*
(*b*) Deleri totus exercitus potuit si fugientes persecuti victores essent. *The whole army might have been destroyed if the conquerors had pursued the fugitives.*

Obs. 5. In impossible conditions the imperfect subjunctive may be used to express continuous action in past time, the pluperfect simply past time.

Exercise 170

Cato was more dignified than severe.	Cato erat gravior quam severior.

1. Whether you stay or go you will not be free from care.
2. If Ariovistus had been wiser than he was reckless no German would have crossed the Rhine.
3. If I have not told the truth prove me wrong.
4. If a mad man were to ask you for a sword you would not give it to him.
5. If we cannot endure your pride we will leave the country.
6. Take all the soldiers with you if you wish it.
7. If the Trojans had not listened to Sinon the Greeks would not have entered the city.
8. I would listen to you if I were not so angry.
9. May I die if Caesar dies.
10. We should never have heard of Hector if Troy had not been besieged.

Exercise 171

To be involved in turmoil.	In rerum perturbatione versari.

1. Had you not failed me in my hour of danger we should not now be involved in this turmoil.
2. If you were to act thus the political situation would be stabilised.
3. Were Labienus and his legions not to join us we should be defeated.
4. If you had come to me and not loitered at Baiae I could have helped you.
5. Had Caesar been in office during these troublous times the result would have been different.
6. If you devote yourself to learning, not amusement, you will succeed.

7. If the promised corn comes to hand we will advance but if it is delayed we will remain where we are.

8. He would have died where he lay had not his friend found him.

9. Whether you are a patriot or a traitor I cannot forget that we have been friends.

10. Unless you take prompt action you will be outwitted by Clodius.

Exercise 172

To preserve one's equanimity. Aequo animo esse.

1. If you had not been consul last year you would certainly be elected now.

2. Whether the judges acquit us or condemn us we will endeavour to preserve our equanimity.

3. If you keep your heart high and do not allow trifles to discourage you, everything will come right.

4. Would Caesar have smashed the forces of Afranius had he not been a consummate general?

5. You ought to have come to Rome if you really desired my assistance.

6. Whether the state survives or goes down in ruin we shall know that we have done our duty.

7. An energetic man even if not a prudent one could have averted this crisis.

8. Soldiers, we will never return to our fatherland except as victors.

9. Whether he had advanced or retreated he could not have eluded the overwhelming force of the Germans.

10. If you had had any love for your country you would not have failed her in her hour of need.

Exercise 173

A patriotic group. Ii qui et haberi et esse boni cives volunt.

But there is ample evidence to show that even before the death of Crassus Caesar was determined to become sole ruler of the state.[1] Nor was Pompeius the man to prevent the realization of this ambition. If Pompeius had been less stupid and conceited, if Caesar had been a little less clever, it would have been possible for a patriotic group to prevent the destruction which threatened the state. But in no way was Pompeius a match for Caesar. The former was anxious to maintain the position his military successes had secured for him: the latter was now leader of a devoted army, and still a past-master[2] of the arts which win the support of the average man.

If Caesar wished to become dictator, there were many obstacles in his way; but even if the forces of his opponent were equal to his own, his genius would be likely to turn the scale[3] in his favour.

Exercise 174

To canvass the electors. Suffragatores comparare.

Nevertheless, three years after the death of Crassus at Carrhae, Pompeius seems to have thought that he was strong enough to secure Caesar's overthrow. Caesar desired the consulship for the year following that in which he was to lay down his command in Gaul. But

[1] Say, himself to hold supreme power. [2] Peritissimus. [3] inclinare rem.

if he were to enter Rome to canvass the electors he would, by doing so, become a private citizen, and therefore liable to prosecution on some charge.[1] If, on the other hand, he remained in Gaul he could not be a candidate for the consulship unless permission were granted him to stand for the consulship in his absence. A resolution was passed in the assembly of the people granting this permission. Pompeius was angry at this, and passed a law by which Caesar would be forced to lay down his command nine months earlier than was usual.

Exercise 175

To put everything to the touch. Fortunam experiri.

If war now seemed to be inevitable, Pompeius must not be freed from all blame. If Caesar's requests were unconstitutional Pompeius, too, had held many extraordinary commands. Caesar therefore might reasonably believe that he ought to obtain what he desired. But Pompeius, in opposing Caesar, must have known that the dispute would not be settled without recourse to[2] arms. Yet if Pompeius really wanted to put everything to the touch, it seems curious that his first action was to evacuate Italy. Possibly he thought that by doing so he could prevent the importation of corn, since he had an immense fleet. But if this was his intention he failed, for Caesar with reckless daring transported his soldiers into Greece, making two crossings, and soon was blockading the Pompeian forces in Dyrrachium—the smaller army besieging the greater.

[1] crimini obnoxius. [2] Use 'decurro' impersonally.

Exercise 176

To effect a junction with. Coniungere suas copias (dat. or cum + abl.)

Caesar's conduct of the campaign at Dyrrachium was by no means successful. Indeed there is hardly room for doubt that, in this instance, he was over self-confident for, when Pompeius refused to fight a pitched battle, Caesar with his smaller forces endeavoured to build a wall round the town, and thus to prevent the Pompeian army from moving.

If Caesar had accomplished this the war would have been over, but Pompeius was too experienced a general to be caught thus. Before the wall could be completed, the Pompeian forces broke out and in the battle which followed, Caesar's army was badly mauled. Caesar was now in a difficult situation, for if Pompeius could reach Thessaly he would not only effect a junction with Scipio's troops, but he would also obtain a terrain suitable for cavalry manoeuvres,[1] in which arm[2] he was very strong.

[1] Say, of fighting cavalry battles. [2] qua parte copiarum.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

Such clauses give the reason (real or alleged) for the statement made in the Main Clause.

In English they are introduced by 'because,' 'since,' 'inasmuch as,' 'on account of the fact that.' Latin equivalents are

quod / quia } *because.* quandoquidem / quoniam } *since.*

Rule 62. Causal conjunctions are followed by the indicative if the reason given is admitted to be a fact, by the Subjunctive if the reason is merely alleged.

Example:

(a) ***Because the prisoners had deceived him Caesar treated them as enemies.***

Captivos, quod eum deceperant, in hostium numero Caesar habuit.

(b) ***He refused to come to my house on the ground that he was ill.***

Venire domum meam recusavit quod esset aeger.

Obs. 1. The verb of a Causal clause in reported speech will be in the Subjunctive.

Obs. 2. Notice:

Non quo, non quod, not that, not because.
Non quin, not but that.

Since these phrases introduce a reason merely for the sake of rejecting it, they will be followed by the subjunctive.

Example:

I left Baiae yesterday not because the place wearied me but because I have been summoned to Rome.

Baiis heri discessi non quod me loci taederet sed quod Romam arcessitus sum.

Obs. 3. *The Relative.*

Qui, quae, quod, is sometimes used as a causal conjunction, i.e. when qui = quia is. It is frequently strengthened by quippe.

Example:

I am very grateful to old age, which (i.e. because it) has increased my appetite for talk.

Habeo senectuti magnam gratiam quae mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit.

NOTE. With quippe qui (for he, or because he) Cicero uses only the Subjunctive, Livy both Indicative and Subjunctive.

Example:

I always looked on him as a friend for I knew that he bore me the warmest affection.

Eum semper pro amico habui, quippe quem scirem mei esse amantissimum.

Exercise 177

There is, in addition, the fact that. . . . Accedit quod.

1. Because Gracchus tried to help the people he was killed.
2. Brutus stabbed Caesar in the belief that Caesar was aiming at the kingship.
3. Feeling that he was likely to succeed in his undertaking, I decided to join Caesar's party.
4. As we are planning to hoodwink Pompeius we must be very careful.
5. I intend to depart to-morrow, not that I am unhappy here, but because I have business in Florence.
6. Since this is your opinion you should not delay.
7. Caesar ordered the prisoners to be killed in the belief that they were traitors.
8. They approved of the bill unanimously under the impression that it was of benefit to them.
9. Socrates was placed on trial on the charge of corrupting the youth.
10. There is in addition the fact that you have no great experience in military matters.

Exercise 178

All the best men. Optimus quisque.

1. Just because Cato is a man of the greatest influence you ought not to believe that Murena is guilty.
2. Inasmuch as you have aided Sulpicius you have injured me.
3. I believed that Pompeius would defeat Caesar, not that he was a better general, but because the Senate supported him.
4. All the best men admired Cato, not because he wooed their friendship, but because he was a thoroughly[1] honest man.
5. Under the impression that the state was in danger the Senate decided to appoint a dictator.
6. Seeing that you were unlikely to help me, I decided to sail for Corinth.
7. Clodius was the object of universal hatred because he was utterly unscrupulous.
8. I shall pretend to be rejoiced at Caesar's victory.
9. In the belief that we should be safe in Rome, we hastened to the Capitol.
10. In the circumstances you should seek to arrange a conference between the leaders.

[1] Superlative.

Exercise 179

It is more than likely. Vix dubitandum est.

It is probable that the respect in which Pompeius held Caesar's military ability had prevented the entire destruction of Caesar's army. Had the former boldly attacked Caesar's earthworks it is more than likely that the attack would have been successful. But since Pompeius feared a trap he concentrated his attention on breaking out, and neglected the opportunity of fighting a decisive battle. Still the success of the operation raised the confidence[1] of the Pompeian forces to such a pitch,[2] that they thought the campaign already won. Yet if the truth must be told, their victory was not really remarkable.[3] The fact that the Pompeians had the superior numbers, that Caesar's forces were scattered, that they were cut into two divisions and could not support one another, explains their defeat.

[1] Efferre animos. [2] Eo. [3] Use gerundive of miror.

Exercise 180

To give time for. Interponere spatium ad.
War-worn troops. Milites labore et bello confecti.

Caesar was now compelled to revise his plans for the conduct of the campaign.[1] But first he called all his troops together and urged them not to lose heart because they had sustained one defeat and that[2] not a very serious one. The spirits of the soldiers revived under this exhortation and they begged Caesar to allow them to fight immediately. But Caesar, because he felt that he could not repose full confidence[3] in men who had recently been so panic-stricken, and because he wished to give them time for the recovery of their erstwhile valour, decided to remain inactive. Pompeius, after an abortive[4] effort to follow up his victory, withdrew into Thessaly, since he believed that on the Thessalian plains his preponderance of cavalry would ensure his victory[5] over Caesar's war-worn legions.

[1] Say, change the plan (rationem) of the war. [2] Eam.
[3] Say, could not trust sufficiently. [4] Attempted in vain.
[5] Haud dubiam victoriam expedire.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

Consider the English:—

(a) Although Caesar is clever he will not reach the throne.
(b) Though Caesar (may) be clever he will not reach the throne.

In (a) the speaker concedes the *fact* of Caesar's cleverness; in (b) he concedes the proposition for the sake of argument. In Latin type (a) requires the Indicative, type (b) the Subjunctive in the Though-clause.

Rule 63. The concessive conjunctions etsi and etiamsi, are followed by the indicative when what is conceded is admitted to be a fact, by the Subjunctive when the truth of what is conceded is only admitted for the sake of argument.

Example:

(a) Etsi Caesar est callidus, ad regnum non perveniet.
(b) Etiamsi Caesar sit prudens, ad regnum non perveniet.

Obs 1. Quamquam,[1] tametsi, (although) are only used with the Indicative.

Obs. 2. Ut, cum, quamvis, (although) are always followed by the Subjunctive.

Note. Quamvis = quam vis, as you please. Its original use would be in such a sentence as:

Let Caesar be as clever as you please. . . .
Caesar sit tam callidus quam vis.

This explains why quamvis is *always* followed by the Subjunctive.

Obs. 3. Quamvis is often used without a verb. Thus:

Caesar, although clever, will not reach the throne.
Caesar, quamvis callidus, ad regnum non perveniet.

Obs. 4. The verb of a Concessive clause in reported speech will be in the Subjunctive.

[1] Quamquam *always* takes a finite verb.

Exercise 181

To respect. In honore habere.

1. Though the forces of the enemy are great they will not pass this river.
2. Even if Marius was a bad consul no one can deny that he was a good general.
3. Gaius Gracchus, although a clever man, was not so much respected as his brother.
4. Although Crassus is very rich he is not mean.
5. In spite of the fact that the crown was offered to him he wished to remain a private citizen.
6. However clever you are you will not deceive Cicero.
7. Although our constitution still exists[1] the enemies of our country are active within the city.
8. Even if the tenth legion had been present they would not have turned the scale.
9. However much you favour Caesar you ought not to be willing to destroy the state.
10. Prudent though he proved himself he made many mistakes.

Commoror – to remain.

[1] Use re publica frui.

Exercise 182

Render an account. Rationem reddere.

1. However many enemies oppose our march we shall win through.[1]

2. However great the crisis we should strive to keep our heads.

3. Even though you have identified yourself with the conservatives you ought not to oppose this measure.

4. Whatever your suffering remember that a stout heart will help you to happiness at last.

5. Although Caesar was commander-in-chief in Gaul he had to render an account of his actions to the senate.

6. However difficult the case, Cicero could move the minds of the judges by an appeal to their pity.

7. Even if Pompeius does promise to go to Spain why should I be forced to give him two legions?

8. Whatever his fault he has paid an adequate penalty.

9. Supremely clever though he be circumstances will prove too much for him.

10. In spite of the disaffection in Gaul we may trust Caesar at least to protect the province.

---

[1] Use perrumpere (trans.).

Exercise 183

On unequal terms. Iniqua condicione.

Although Caesar had not forgotten the unfortunate issue[1] of the fighting round Dyrrachium, he believed that sufficient time had now elapsed to admit of[2] his feeling sure of the temper of his troops. He therefore decided that his next move[3] was to discover whether Pompeius was prepared to fight a pitched battle. But although he frequently led his forces into full view of the enemy Pompeius could not be enticed from his camp. Soon it was obvious that he was waiting in the hope that Caesar,[4] becoming impatient at his inactivity, would advance into an unfavourable position. But despite Caesar's eagerness for a decisive engagement, he refused to fight on unequal terms. He therefore gave the order to strike camp. But when the tents had been taken down it was noticed that Pompeius had left his camp on the hills and was advancing into the plain.

---

[1] Use indirect question. [2] Ut. [3] Sense. [4] Si.

Exercise 184

A decisive engagement. Decertare proelio.

It was apparent that Pompeius was now fully determined on a decisive engagement. Indeed, as was afterwards learned, he had boasted that Caesar's army would be routed before the main battle was joined.[1] To his officers, who expressed surprise at this statement, he revealed his strategy. "I am aware," he said, "that what I promise seems almost incredible, but first hear my plans! I have ordered the cavalry to attack Caesar's right wing on[2] the open flank. They have promised to carry out this manoeuvre[3] in such a way as to break Caesar's formations and put his army to rout before we can even hurl a dart at the enemy. Thus without danger to the legions, and almost without a blow we shall end the war. This, moreover, will be easy to accomplish since we are so strong in cavalry."

[1] Use concurrere. [2] ab. [3] do this.

COMPARATIVE CLAUSES

The following words and phrases are used to introduce Comparative Clauses in Latin.

A.	*than*	quam.
	as	ut.
	the same as	idem ac.
	just as	perinde ac.
	not otherwise than	non secus ac.
	otherwise than	aliter ac.
	as much as	aeque ac.
B.	*as if*	quasi.
		tamquam si.
	just as if	velut.

Rule 64. **The words and phrases (a) are followed by the Indicative since they introduce a statement which exists in fact. The words and phrases (b) are followed by the Subjunctive since they introduce a statement which exists in thought.**

A.
You speak more wisely than you write.
Loqueris sapientius quam scribis.
This is the same as that.
Hoc est idem ac illud.
You have acted contrary to your promise.
Aliter ac promisisti fecisti.

B.
The soldiers hailed him as if he were consul.
Milites eum, tamquam si esset consul, salutaverunt.
They dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence just as though he were present.
Ariovisti crudelitatem velut si coram adesset horrebant.

Obs. 1. The verb of a Comparative clause in reported speech will be in the Subjunctive.

CLAUSES OF PROPORTION

Notice the following:

The more a man trusts himself the more he excels.

Ut quisque sibi plurimum confidit ita maxime excellit.

The worse a thing is the more quickly must it be punished.

Ut quaeque res est turpissima sic maturissime vindicanda est.

N.B. Ut quisque . . . ita (or sic) require a superlative in both clauses. With eo . . . quo the Comparative is used.

Example:

Suffering is in proportion to guilt.

Eo gravior dolor est quo culpa maior.

Exercise 185

To be inspired by the gods. Divinitus scire.

1. How many times have I told you that this is the same as that?
2. Just as soldiers are often cruel, politicians are sometimes greedy.
3. The oftener the Britons were defeated the harder they fought.
4. The more difficulties a man overcomes the better he is.
5. The woman foretold everything which happened just as if she were inspired by the god.
6. I cannot now act in opposition to the decrees of the senate (say: otherwise than the senate has decreed.)
7. Just as might have been expected, Marius proved an incapable consul.
8. The soldiers congratulated the general as though the enemy had been conquered already.
9. Their folly was the more reprehensible considering the difficulty of their situation.

Exercise 186

In accordance with his usual impetuosity.	Ut erat violentus or Pro solita eius violentia.

1. Then, in accordance with his usual impetuosity, he ordered his men to the attack.
2. You ought never to speak otherwise than as you think.
3. In the harbour there were more ships than you could count.

4. Just as an army cannot fight without food, so an orator cannot win glory unless he is learned.

5. Are we to abandon the enterprise because we are poor, just as if money were the only thing we lacked?

6. Aeneas, as Virgil tells us, brought the gods of Troy to Italy.

7. You will never convince me that lying is the same as telling the truth.

8. The wiser a man is the more capable is he of serving the state.

9. He was angry because (as he thought) I had surrendered the town to Hannibal.

10. Just as Cicero entered the Senate house the consul announced his intention of dismissing the senators.

Exercise 187

To depend on their valour. In eorum virtute constare.

But Caesar was the same as he had ever been, and, from the disposition[1] of the Pompeian line, he quickly perceived the threat to his right wing. He therefore withdrew certain cohorts from the centre, and deployed them to oppose the cavalry, telling them that the issue of the day depended on their valour. The fighting did not develop[2] as Pompeius had planned. First Caesar's line advanced at the double but, seeing that the Pompeians did not advance against them, they suddenly halted of their own accord just as if a command had been issued. This they did lest they should reach the enemy's lines breathless and with their vigour spent. The Pompeians still made no move, and Caesar's soldiers marched within range. Immediately they hurled their javelins and then, drawing their swords, they dashed to close quarters.

[1] Say, 'when he saw how . . . was drawn up.' [2] nec ratio proelii.

Exercise 188

It was all over with. . . . Actum est de.

But Pompeius still hoped that his cavalry would turn the scale. And indeed they had succeeded in working round Caesar's right wing, but, before they could complete the operation they were faced by Caesar's fourth line. This intrepid infantry made so violent a charge upon the Pompeian cavalry that they were routed and fled to the hills. The victorious cohorts continued their advance until they were in a position to attack the Pompeians in the rear. When Pompeius noticed this, realizing that matters had gone otherwise than he had planned, he betook himself to the camp in certain knowledge that it was all over with his army. His troops, though deserted by their leader, still fought on with the courage of despair,[1] just as their ancestors had fought against Hannibal. But the more obstinate their resistance the more impetuous became the attacks of Caesar's men, and at last they broke and fled.

[1] Omni re desperata.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

A.

Translation of "Any"

Translate "any"

(1) after a negative or virtual negative by
Quisquam, quaequam, quicquam. (Substantival.)
Ullus, -a, -um. (Adjectival.)

Scarcely anyone believes that.
Id vix quisquam credit.

He says that he has no enemies in Rome.
Inimicos esse sibi Romae negat ullos.

(2) in an affirmative sentence by
Quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quodlibet, adj.).
Quivis, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis, adj.).

Anyone can do that.
Quivis illud facere potest.

Obs. Libet is the impersonal verb—it pleases.
vis—you wish.

(3) after num, si, nisi, ne, by
Quis, qua, quid. (Substantival.)
Qui, qua, quod. (Adjectival.)

Surely no one believes that? (Does anyone really believe that?)
Numquis id credit?

Let the consuls see to it that the state does not incur any hurt.
Consules videant ne quid damni civitas accipiat.

B.

Translation of "Some"

Translate "some" by—

(1) Aliquis, aliquid. (Substantival.)
Aliqui, aliqua, aliquod. (Adjectival.),
when "someone," "something" is opposed to "no one" "nothing," i.e. when no definite reference is intended.

Someone will come soon.
Aliquis mox veniet.

Obs. But in the predicate aliquis often means 'a person of consequence.'

I am somebody.
Sum aliquis.

(2) Quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam adjectival) when definite individuals, who might be named, are referred to.

Certain citizens came to meet me.
Cives quidam mihi obviam venerunt.

(3) Nescio quis, nescio quid, (Substantival.)
Nescio qui, nescio quod, (Adjectival.),
when reference is made to some person or thing not worth more careful definition.

Then someone or other came.
Tum temporis venit nescio quis.

Obs. Some . . . others is translated alii . . . alii.

C.

Translation of "Each"

Translate "each" by—

(1) **uterque, utraque, utrumque,**
when the reference is to two persons or things.

A triumph was decreed to each (of two generals).
Triumphus utrique decretus est.

(2) **Quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque, adjectival.),**
when "each" is used of a greater number than two.

Each man strove to escape the danger.
Quisque periculo evadere conatus est.

Obs. Notice the idiomatic uses of quisque.

He chose all the best soldiers.
Optimum quemque militem elegit.

Every five years the Romans held a census.
Sexto quoque anno Romani censum habebant.

Render to each his own.
Suum cuique redde.

The better a thing is the rarer it is.
Optimum quidque rarissimum est.

Exercise 189

All the best citizens. Quisque optimus civis.

1. Every respectable citizen fears the recklessness of this profligate praetor.
2. No one ever gained anything without work.
3. Some men professed to believe that Caesar was ambitious for the crown.
4. We will advance across this river and let no one strive to hinder us.
5. Any one can envy a man like Caesar; some may try to follow him.
6. Some men are born to rule, others to obey.
7. The general announced that he would march at dawn, and no one was bold enough to say him nay.
8. We ought to be willing to undergo any danger on behalf of our native land.
9. All the outstanding men in the state were threatened by Clodius.
10. If you had given me any hope of safety I should not now be a suppliant for Caesar's favour.

ADDITIONAL USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

Rule 65. Relative adverbs of place are frequently used with the Subjunctive to express purpose, result, concession or cause.

I sent him to the city to live.
Eum ad urbem misi ubi viveret.

Caesar stationed scouts on the ridge to watch the enemy from there.
Caesar in iugo speculatores collocavit unde hostes intuerentur.

He is setting out for Rome though he is never likely to reach the city.
Romam proficiscitur quo nunquam venturus sit.

The Subjunctive is used after SUNT QUI, 'there are some who'; NEMO EST QUI; 'there is none to'; HABEO QUOD; 'I have . . . to'; NIHIL EST QUOD; 'there is nothing to'; and after UNUS and SOLUS.

There are some who fear to fight.
Sunt qui dimicare timeant.

He has nothing to eat.
Quod edat non habet.

He was the only one wounded.
Unus erat qui vulneratus esset.

Dignus, *worthy*, indignus, *unworthy*, and aptus, *fit*, may be followed by the relative and subjunctive.

He seems to be { *worthy* / *unworthy* / *fit* } *to command a legion.*

Videtur qui legioni imperet esse { dignus / indignus / aptus }

Exercise 190

He is inconsistent. Ipse ab se dissentit.

1. I shall go to Rome because there I hope to find my friends.
2. There are some who believe that the earth is flat.
3. Would anyone believe that Crassus was fit to command an army?
4. Alexander wept because there were no worlds left to conquer.
5. Let us find a suitable place to pitch a camp.
6. He is a candidate for the consulship although he will never obtain it.
7. There is no one who does not envy you.
8. Some few there were who believed that Cicero could restore the Roman state.
9. There are none who are not sometimes inconsistent.
10. Choose that place because the enemy cannot surprise[1] you there.

[1] Attack someone unawares—aliquem inopinantem aggredi.

ORATIO OBLIQUA

Speeches may be reported in two ways.

(1) by giving the actual words of the speaker.
This form of report is called direct speech or *ORATIO RECTA* (O.R.).

(2) By introducing the report of the speech by the words 'he said.' The report will then be in the 3rd. person throughout. This form of report is called indirect speech or *ORATIO OBLIQUA* (O.O.).

Now consider this example of a speech reported in O.R. and O.O.

O.R.

"It is my intention now," said Critognatus, "to say nothing about the opinions of those who call the basest slavery by the name of surrender. My business is with these men who approve of a sortie; in their counsel the memory of our old-time valour still seems to dwell. That is softness of mind on your part, not valour, to be unable to bear want for a little time. Do not deprive of your aid men who, taking thought for your safety, have disregarded their own peril. Do you doubt their loyalty and steadfastness because they have not arrived to the day? Yet do you really think that the Romans are actively engaged every day on those further entrenchments merely for amusement? Use the Romans as witnesses that the arrival of our troops is at hand, and that in fear thereof they are busy in their works day and night. What more need I say?"

O.O.

Critognatus said that it was his intention to say nothing then about the opinion of those who called the basest slavery by the name of surrender. His business was with those who approved of a sortie; in the counsel of those men the memory of their old-time valour still seemed to dwell. (He said that) it was softness of mind on their part, not valour, to be unable to bear want for a little time. (He urged them) not to deprive of their aid men who, taking thought for their safety, had disregarded their own peril. (He asked them) if they doubted their loyalty and steadfastness because they had not arrived to the day. Yet did they really think that the Romans were actively engaged every day on those further entrenchments merely for amusement? Let them use the Romans as witnesses that the arrival of their troops was at hand, and that in fear thereof they were busy in their works day and night. Did he need to say more?

These reports should be carefully studied and the following differences noted.

(1) All pronouns and possessive adjectives of the first and second persons in O.R. are changed into the 3rd person in O.O.

(2) All demonstratives and adverbs in O.R. which indicate present time and place are changed in O.O. to those indicating a remoter time and place.
e.g. This becomes *that*; now, *then*; here, *there*.

(3) Commands and prohibitions in O.R. become exhortations (in the 3rd. person) in O.O.

(4) Verbs in the present tense in O.R. are changed into the past tense in O.O.

(5) In O.O. the report is broken up by the interpolation of the phrases 'he said that,' 'he asked,' 'he urged.'

Now compare the Latin version of the reports set out above: (N.B. Differences in O.O. are indicated in italics.)

O.R.

"Nihil" inquit "nunc de eorum sententia dicturus sum qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant. Cum his mihi res est qui eruptionem probant; quorum in consilio pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollitia, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. Nolite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum neglexerunt. Quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantiaque dubitatisne? Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causa cotidie exerceri putatis? His utimini testibus appropinquare nostrorum adventum, cuius rei terrore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid mihi pluribus verbis est opus?

O.O.

Critognatus sic: Nihil *tum se esse dicturum* de eorum sententia qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appell*arent*; cum *illis sibi* rem *esse* qui eruptionem prob*arent*; quorum in consilio pristinae residere virtutis memoria vid*eretur*. Animi *esse eam* mollit*iam*, non virtut*em*, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. *Ne eos illorum* auxilio exspoli*arent* qui *illorum* salutis causa suum periculum negl*exissent*. Quod ad diem non ven*issent num* de eorum fide constantiaque dubit*arent*? *Num putarent* Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animi causa cotidie exerceri? *Iis* ut*erentur* testibus appropinquare *suorum* adventum, cuius rei terrore exterrit*os* diem noctemque in opere vers*ari*. Quid *sibi* pluribus verbis *esse* opus?

It will be noticed that certain of the differences between the two forms are common to English and Latin.

(1) The pronouns and possessive adjectives of the 1st and 2nd persons are changed into the 3rd person.

Obs. 1. But the ambiguity which appears in English from this change is avoided in Latin by the use of se and suus when referring to the speaker.

Obs. 2. The pronouns and possessive adjectives of O.R. are changed in O.O. thus:

O.R.	O.O.
Ego, nos; meus, noster.	se; suus.
tu, vos; tuus, vester.	is (or ille); eius, eorum.
hic, iste (as pronouns).	ille.

(2) Demonstrative adjectives and adverbs denoting present time or place are changed to those indicating remoter time or place.

Obs. 1. The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs of O.R. are changed in O.O. thus:

O.R.	O.O.
Hic, iste.	ille (sometimes *is, ea, id*).
Hic (here), hinc.	illic, illinc.
Nunc; hodie.	iam, tunc; illo die.

(3) Commands and prohibitions become exhortations in the 3rd person.

But here the resemblances cease. We note, therefore, the following differences as being peculiar to Latin.

(4) All verbs in main clauses are in the infinitive and their subjects in the accusative case.

(5) Verbs in subordinate clauses are in the subjunctive mood.

Obs. When the main verb (e.g. 'he said') is in a past tense, the strict rule of sequence will require all subordinate verbs to be in either the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. (cf. the English past tense.)

(6) Questions addressed to the audience (i.e. questions in the 2nd person in O.R.) are in the subjunctive mood.

(7) Questions which expect no answer and which are, therefore, equivalent to negative statements are in the accusative and infinitive in O.O. when in the 1st or 3rd persons in O.R.

(8) Clauses introduced by a coordinate relative (see rule 32) have their verbs in the infinitive.

The following examples should be studied.

(1) I have crossed the Rhine, not of my own will, but on the request of the Gauls.

O.R. Transii Rhenum non mea sponte sed a Gallis rogatus.
O.O. (Dixit) transi*isse* Rhenum *sese* non *sua* sponte sed roga*tum* a Gallis.

(2) To-day you have defeated the Germans.

O.R. Hodie Germanos superavistis.
O.O. (Dixit) *illo die* Germano*s* ab *eis* superat*os esse*.

(3) Leap down, soldiers.

O.R. Desilite, milites.
O.O. (Dixit) desil*irent* milites.

(4) Illustrated above in 1 and 2.

(5) (a) I remember those things of which you have reminded me.

O.R. Eas res quas vos commemorastis, memoria teneo.
O.O. (Dixit) *se* memoria *tenere* eas res quas commemor*assent*.

(b) **I came to Rome because I wished to see you.**
O.R. Romam, quod te videre volebam, veni.
O.O. (Dixit) *se* Romam ven*isse* quod *eum* videre *vellet*.

(6) **Why do you think Pompeius will be defeated?**
O.R. Cur Pompeium victum iri iudicatis?
O.O. (Dixit) cur Pompeium victum iri iudic*arent*.

(7) **How will the allies provide ships? (The inference is that they cannot.)**
O.R. Quo modo socii naves comparabunt.
O.O. (Dixit) quo modo soc*ios* naves comparat*uros*.

(8) **And from this you can judge what profit there is in steadfastness.**
O.R. Ex quo iudicari potest quantum habeat in se boni constantia.
O.O. (Dixit) ex quo iudicari *posse* quantum hab*eret* in se boni constantia.

Exercise 191

Note. The following sentences are to be treated as occurring in a report in O. O.

1. Who has believed our report?
2. The enemy whom we defeated last year has again attacked us.
3. We must hold out against this host until Caesar comes to our aid.
4. Trust your leader and do not think that the general's task has been entrusted to each of you.
5. Can Caesar arrive before we are overwhelmed by this host?
6. The enemy are now advancing and therefore we must take measures for our safety.
7. Your rashness has brought us to this pass.
8. The arrival of Caesar's forces cannot now be long delayed.
9. The decision is in your hands and therefore you should take time for deliberation.
10. **Fight as bravely to-day as you did yesterday.**

Exercise 192

The flower of the army. Robur exercitus.

T. Labienus spoke thus to Pompeius before the battle of Pharsalus:—

"Do not imagine, Pompeius, that this army which faces us is the one which subdued Gaul. I was present at every battle in the wars with the Gauls, and you must credit me with knowing what I say. An insignificant minority[1] of those soldiers survives, the greater part has perished in battle. For how could this be otherwise when fighting has been so continuous?[2] Surely you have heard of Caesar's efforts to secure recruits?[3] Therefore have no fear. You are fighting against raw levies,[4] for the flower of the old army is no more. Therefore join battle with confidence, and have faith both in your superior numbers and in the spirit of your victorious troops."

Exercise 193

Address troops. Apud milites contionari.

Caesar also addressed his troops before the battle. He told them that, as they knew, he had made many efforts to secure a peaceful settlement of the differences[5] between himself and Pompeius, all of which had proved useless. He hoped, however, by this last battle, to end the war. He therefore begged the soldiers to do their duty, and never to forget that under his leadership they had won innumerable victories. He also urged them not to let the reverse at Dyrrachium weigh upon their spirits. It was true that they had been defeated, but what army was always victorious? Was there a single man in the ranks who despaired of success? If so, let him desert to the enemy. But if all believed that victory would be theirs let them fight bravely so that they might soon return home.

---

[1] Perexigua pars.
[2] Say, in so many battles.
[3] Say, to fill up his legions.
[4] legiones nuper conscriptas.
[5] controversias componere.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA

In accordance with the rule for O.O. (5) the verb in the protasis of a conditional sentence must be in the subjunctive mood, the verb in the apodosis, in the infinitive.

Obs. The tense of the verb of saying or thinking will determine the tense of the subjunctive verb according to the usual rule for sequence of tenses, in A1, A2, A3, and B. 3. In B1 and B2 the protasis is unchanged.

The examples given on page 200 will appear thus in O.O.

A. INDICATIVE MOOD IN BOTH CLAUSES IN O.R.

O. R.	O. O.
(1) Si hoc facis, peccas.	(dicit) *eum*, si illud *faciat*, *peccare*. (dixit) *eum*, si illud *faceret*, *peccare*.
(2) Si hoc fecisti, peccavisti.	(dicit) *eum*, si illud *fecerit*, *peccavisse*. (dixit) *eum*, si illud *fecisset*, *peccavisse*.
(3) Si hoc feceris,[1] peccabis.	(dicit) *eum*, si illud *fecerit*,[2] *peccaturum esse*. (dixit) *eum*, si illud *fecisset*, *peccaturum esse*.

[1] Fut. Pf. Indic. [2] Pf. Subj.

B. SUBJUNCTIVE IN BOTH CLAUSES IN O.R.

O. R.	O. O.
(1) Si hoc faceres, peccares.	(dicit) (dixit) *eum*, si illud *faceret*, *peccaturum esse*.
(2) Si hoc fecisses, peccavisses.	(dicit) (dixit) *eum*, si illud *fecisset*, *peccaturum fuisse*.
(3) Si hoc facias, pecces.	(dicit) *eum*, si illud *faciat*, *peccaturum esse*. (dixit) *eum*, si illud *faceret*, *peccaturum esse*.

Exercise 194

I earnestly implore. Oro atque obsecro.

1. Did you think that you would save yourself if you pardoned these men?
2. Caesar is sure of this, that if Pompeius risks a battle he will be conquered.
3. We say deliberately that even if the Romans had not defeated Hannibal the Carthaginians would never have become an imperial people.
4. Sulla believed that the Roman state could be restored if all power was held by the senate.
5. If you are agreeable, he said, I propose to set out to-morrow.
6. You will never convince me that the Romans would have been defeated if Hasdrubal had not been slain.
7. He said that, if the letter did not arrive soon he would be compelled to leave Rome.
8. Were you to refuse my request, he said, I should not know what to do.
9. I earnestly implore you to put me in command of your army, he said, if you wish to conquer the Germans.
10. He promised to disband his troops if Pompeius would do the same.

VIRTUAL ORATIO OBLIQUA

We have seen that the verbs of subordinate clauses in oratio obliqua are in the subjunctive mood.

It is now to be noticed that the subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses if, from the context, it is clear that a verb of saying or thinking is implied.

Obs. This convenient usage economically indicates such English phrases as 'it is alleged,' 'as was thought' and the like.

Ex. Caesar was killed because he was seeking to become king.

(a) Caesar interfectus est quod regnum petebat.

(b) Caesar interfectus est quod regnum peteret.

Obs. 1. In (a) the reason for Caesar's death is stated as a fact. In (b) the use of the subjunctive mood (peteret) shows that the speaker was giving a reason which was generally believed but to which he did not necessarily subscribe.

In such sentences "se" and "suus" must always be used to refer to the subject of the main clause.

This is shown in the following examples.

Balbus did not come to dinner because his slave was sick.
Balbus ad cenam non venit quod servus eius erat aeger.

but:

Balbus did not come to dinner because (as he said) his slave was sick.
Balbus ad cenam non venit quod servus suus esset aeger.

Exercise 195.

To put faith in.	Fidem habere (dat.).
To take up arms against.	Conferre manus cum.

(The words in brackets are not to be translated.)

1. Cicero did not speak on behalf of Milo because (as we think) he was afraid.
2. Murena was condemned because in his campaign for the consulship he had distributed meals to citizens.
3. Murena was accused of giving places at the shows to his tribesmen.
4. We can put no faith in men who (we believe) hold such opinions.
5. Many men blame politicians for having made the war.
6. The soldiers complained bitterly because (they alleged) they had been compelled to take up arms against their fellow-countrymen.
7. They all congratulated one another because (they felt that) they had escaped a very great danger.
8. Too little attention was paid to the work of fortification because (as they thought) no enemy was in the neighbourhood.
9. Can we still support these men who (it is alleged) have destroyed their country?
10. When Verres returned to Rome he was placed on trial for maltreating the Sicilians.

CONTINUOUS PROSES OF AN EASIER CHARACTER ON PARTS II AND III (Vocab. p. 346)

Cum-Since.

Exercise 1

To show gratitude. Gratias agere.

Since Ariovistus had been kindly treated by the Roman people he ought to have shown his gratitude to them. But this he did not do; for he refused to come to a conference when invited by Caesar. Under these circumstances Caesar decided to march against the Germans. But Ariovistus, on hearing this, sent a message to Caesar. "I am now ready," he said, "to come to a conference since you have moved your forces nearer to my territory, and I can now make the journey without danger."

Exercise 2

To fix a day. Constituere diem.

Since Ariovistus was now willing to discuss these matters with him Caesar again fixed a day for the conference. But Ariovistus, since he greatly feared the Roman infantry, made another request of Caesar. "Let us," he said, "bring no infantry with us, but let our bodyguards be of cavalry."

Caesar however, since he did not trust the Gallic cavalry, mounted the tenth legion on horses. Whereupon a soldier said that Caesar had honoured them by making them knights.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

Exercise 3

Just after the third watch.	sub De tertia vigilia.
At daybreak.	Prima luce.

Caesar, being informed by scouts that the Helvetii intended to cross the river, set out with three legions just after the third watch in order to prevent them. He marched very quickly, so that he might reach the river as soon as possible. He arrived there at daybreak and immediately sent two legions to attack the Helvetii, who were waiting on the bank.

Exercise 4

Towards evening.	Sub vesperum.
To suffer wrong.	Iniuriam accipere.
To form a plan.	Consilium inire.

Towards evening Caesar ordered the gates to be closed and the troops to leave the town in order that the townsfolk should not suffer wrong from the soldiers. But they (the townsfolk) had previously formed a plan to attack our men off their guard. They thought that, since they had surrendered (abl. abs.) the Romans would look after their posts less carefully. Therefore in the third watch they rushed out of the town with the intention of setting fire to our war engines.

Exercise 5

On high ground.	In edito loco.
At great speed.	Magno cursu.
Make a sally.	Eruptionem facere.

The camp had been placed on high ground, and about a mile away from the camp of the enemy. Nevertheless, the Venelli hastened thither at great speed in order to give the Romans as little time as possible for assembling and arming. They therefore arrived out of breath. Perceiving this, Sabinus ordered his men to make a sally from two gates, so that they might attack the enemy while weary from running.

RESULT CLAUSES

Exercise 6

To become downhearted. Animum demittere.

The battle continued all day. At last our men were so wearied that they could with difficulty stand on the rampart. Moreover, so many men had been wounded that the remainder became downhearted and fought rather sluggishly.[1] Perceiving this, Cotta himself ran to that side of the camp where the attack was fiercest and, seizing a shield, fought so bravely that the battle was renewed with greater vigour.

[1] Comparative.

Exercise 7

To man the entrenchments.	In munitionibus consistere.
To pluck up courage.	Se confirmare.

Publius Sextius Baculus had been left behind with the garrison because he was sick. For five days he had been without food, and was so weak that he could not bear the weight of his armour. But when he saw how critical was the position[1] he seized a weapon from the nearest soldier and fought so bravely that the soldiers plucked up their courage so far as to venture to man the entrenchments.

Exercise 8

To break camp.	Castra movere.
A march of three days.	Iter tridui.
More quickly than any one expected.	Celerius omni opinione.

A few days after, Caesar learnt that the Ubii, having collected great forces of infantry and cavalry, were planning to attack his winter quarters. He was so alarmed at this news that he immediately sent out ten cohorts to collect corn and despatched messengers to Labienus to order him to set out with his legions as quickly as possible. So promptly did Labienus break camp on receipt of this message that after a march of three days he arrived more quickly than any one expected.

[1] Say, the thing to be in the greatest danger.

VERBS OF FEARING

Exercise 9

To be separated from (e.g. the main body).	Intercludi ab.

On the next day the general fearing that the garrison's food would soon fail, decided to attempt to break through the ranks of the besiegers. Therefore just after the third watch, when he hoped the enemy's sentries would be somewhat careless, he led his men out of the town and made a sudden attack on his lines. There was a danger that some of his own men would be separated from the main body in the darkness of the night. But so experienced in warfare were the soldiers that they crossed the enemy's earthworks before they were noticed.

Exercise 10

To force their way.	Per vim iter facere.
To remain under arms.	In armis esse.

When these reports came to hand Caesar, fearing that the Gallic chiefs would not be able to keep their men from fighting, decided gradually to withdraw the troops to a little hill which overhung the road. At length when the day was now far spent[1] he had reached the place and pitched a camp. But so great was his fear that the Gauls would attempt to force their way into the province that he ordered the soldiers to remain under arms all night.

[1] Multo denique die.

Exercise 11

Day after day.	Diem ex die.
The position is perilous.	Res in angusto est.

Day after day Caesar kept on urging the Aedui to bring the corn which they had promised to supply. When, however, they failed to do this he perceived that the position was perilous. He therefore ordered the legions to halt and, after exhorting the soldiers not to be downhearted because they were turning their line of march away from the Helvetii, set off at great speed for Bibracte.

Exercise 12

On the previous day.	Pridie.
Inexperienced in warfare.	Imperitus rei militaris.

On the previous day Caesar had been warned by his scouts that the Belgae, having collected all their forces, were already on the march. Meanwhile ambassadors came to demand that he should not advance further into their territory. Having dismissed the ambassadors he ordered the legions to prepare for battle without delay. Some of the officers who were inexperienced in warfare, were greatly disturbed when they learnt that he intended to advance, but he soon persuaded them to lay aside their fears.

Exercise 13

To treat someone as an enemy.	Aliquem in numero hostium habere.

Weeping, the chiefs of the Gauls threw themselves at Caesar's feet[1] and begged him to spare their lives. He comforted them and told them to set aside all their anxiety, since he did not intend to treat them as enemies. Thereupon, persuaded that Caesar did not wish to harm them, they sought pardon for the injuries they had done to the Roman people, and promised to bind themselves by an oath not to conspire against him again.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Exercise 14

By nature and the hand of man. Natura et manu.

Hearing that the enemy had halted under a mountain a few miles from his camp the general sent scouts to discover their numbers, the nature of the ground and whether they had thrown up an earthwork. When the scouts returned at dawn, they said that only the rear-guard of the enemy had halted and that their position was excellently fortified both by nature and the hand of man. They had not, however, discovered when the enemy intended to move on, nor whether they were in sufficient force[2] to defend the place.

[1] Caesari ad pedes. (N.B.—Caesari—Dative.)
[2] Think of the sense.

Exercise 15

A higher position.	Locus superior.
To wheel.	Signa convertere.
To abandon hope of success in the battle.	Spem contentionis deponere.

The Romans who were now being attacked from the front and on the right flank did not know what to do nor in what direction to make a charge. But Caesar, noticing the number of missiles the enemy were hurling from their higher position, ordered the third rank to wheel and charge up the hill. He then himself went forward. After exhorting the soldiers of the first and second line not to abandon hope of success, he asked who of them was willing to follow him. All to a man sprang forward and sword in hand charged with such fury that the Gauls were soon compelled to show their backs.

Exercise 16

The intention of the enemy.	Quo consilio hostes id agunt.

The captured spy was brought to Caesar. He first asked him if he was willing to disclose the numbers and intentions of the enemy. To these questions[1] the spy returned no answer. Caesar then ordered a centurion to bind the man's limbs tightly and to beat him with rods. When the spy understood what was about to happen he threw himself at Caesar's feet and promised to tell him what he wished to know. From him Caesar learnt the location[2] of the enemy's stronghold.

[1] To him asking. [2] Use 'ubi.'

GERUNDIVE OF OBLIGATION

Exercise 17

At the one moment. Uno tempore.

Caesar had to do everything at the one moment. The flag had to be raised; the signal given by trumpet-call, the troops recalled from the work of entrenching, the men who had gone further afield in search of rubble had to be brought in, the line of battle had to be drawn up and the soldiers harangued. Many of these duties had to be neglected because of the shortness of the time and the nearness of the foe. But the soldiers, were well trained as a result of their previous engagements, and, as Caesar himself says, each man became his own general and gave the necessary orders[1] to himself.

Exercise 18

Without orders.	Iniussu (gen.).
By forced marches.	Magnis itineribus.

Many centurions of the first rank considered that nothing should be done rashly, and that they must not depart from their winter quarters without the orders of the commander-in-chief. But Titurius was not willing to adopt this advice, and kept on shouting that the soldiers must not be kept in cantonments at so great a distance from headquarters. Finally it was decided to set out on the morrow and to push on by forced marches to join T. Labienus. The enemy, however, quickly learned the intention of the Romans and set an ambush along the road by which they had to travel.

[1] Say, what ought to be done.

Exercise 19

A total lack of necessaries.	Inopia omnium.
Not even.	Ne . . . quidem (place the emphatic word between.)

Our troops now had to face the greatest difficulties. The snow on the road was two feet deep and the soldiers had to carry the baggage themselves for the draught animals could neither endure the cold nor, since no supplies of fodder were obtainable, were they strong enough to drag the waggons.

But the spirit of the soldiers was admirable, for though they were in difficulties by reason of a total lack of necessaries, not even one had to be reproved by his commander for seeking to avoid his share of the work.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

Exercise 20

This is the night of nights. Friday

I win his good will.	Eum mihi concilio.
To fall in love.	Amore capi.

Then the women came to the wall of the town and, stretching out their hands, begged Caesar to spare them. Because he pitied them, Caesar granted them pardon, and promised to send them to their homes in safety. This he did because he thought it was a matter of importance to win the good will of this tribe. But it so happened that the sister of a certain chief, who had fallen in love with a cavalry officer, could by no means be persuaded to accompany the rest, and on account of this woman, war broke out anew.

Exercise 21

Half-heartedly. *Segnius.*

(A soldier of Caesar speaks.)

After we had marched for three days through forests we came to a great river. At first we thought that it was impossible to cross it because we had no boats neither could we find a ford. But the general was not disturbed. Summoning the engineers, he showed them the plan of the bridge which he wished to be built. Thereupon we soldiers had to collect timber and to cut it and shape it. The general had no pity on our weariness, nor did he permit us to seek rest. Yet since he himself shared in the labour we were ashamed to work half-heartedly, and thus it happened that in three days we finished the bridge.

CASES

Exercise 22

To break their word.	Fidem fallere.
The latter. .. .. .the former.	Hic haec hoc . . . ille illa illud.

Relying on the assistance of the Aedui, Caesar determined to follow the march of the Helvetii. But the former people failed him. Not only did they send no cavalry, but they were dilatory in supplying the corn which the army needed. Later he discovered the reason. Dumnorix, a man of noble birth, had more influence with the people than the magistrates themselves. He it was who had persuaded the Aedui to break their word. When he learned this, Caesar summoned Divitiacus, the brother of Dumnorix, and informed him of the treachery of the latter.

Exercise 23

Stature. Corporis magnitudo.

The tribe of the Suebi is by far the greatest and most warlike of all the Germans. They live on milk and meat, and dress in skins. They are men of huge stature and they spend their lives in practising the art of war. They have no private holding of land nor do they ever stay in one place longer than the space of one year. When they set out on a campaign they move with great speed and, in battle, they show themselves to be endowed with the utmost courage.

Exercise 24

On a little hill. In edito loco.

Since little of the summer was left, Caesar decided to lead the legions back into winter quarters. He had already chosen a most suitable place for his cantonments on a little hill at the foot of which flowed a swift river. This stream, he thought, would prove a protection against sudden attacks. After ordering Crassus to collect everything of which the soldiers would have need and exhorting the soldiers to defend the cantonments with courage if they were attacked, he himself set out for Lucca at great speed.

Exercise 25

A difficult road. Via impedita.

The camp of the Germans was pitched at a distance of five miles from the Roman camp. It could, however, only be reached by a very difficult road and on foot. But Caesar counted this an advantage for he knew that his foot soldiers were superior both in valour and in numbers to those of the enemy. Moreover, although the Germans were bigger men than the Romans, they were not so experienced in fighting nor had they weapons as effective as the Roman javelins.

TIME CLAUSES

Exercise 26

Word was brought. Allatum est.

While Caesar was waiting at Agedincum word was brought that the Arverni had revolted and were attacking their neighbours. But before Caesar set out thither he recalled two legions which were wintering among the Belgae. This he did since he was unwilling to move until he had collected a sufficient force to ensure a speedy victory. When these legions arrived eight days after he had despatched his messenger he marched with all speed toward Noviodunum.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

1.

(a) Did you believe, Tullius, that the enemy would retreat?

(b) There is no doubt that Pompeius hoped to defeat Caesar.

(c) The Romans, on hearing the shout, knew that the enemy had entered the camp by another gate, and were already giving battle. For a little while they resisted the enemy bravely; but when many had been slain the rest threw away their arms and rushed headlong out of the camp, pursued by the foe. A few escaped into a dense wood that was not far away, but most were either killed or captured. It is said that on that day the Romans lost about three thousand men.

Intermediate, N.S.W.

2.

(a) If you read good books you will learn much.

(b) The Gauls were so brave that they did not fear Caesar and his legions.

(c) The next day Brutus, having entered the country of the Arverni, encamped near a deep and rapid river. Since he was a very prudent man, he immediately despatched some picked horsemen to explore the region and search for the enemy. "When you have done this," he said, "return with the utmost speed." After many hours a weary and wounded horseman rode into the camp and related that all his companions had been captured by the enemy, who were advancing with a large army to attack the Romans. Brutus, on hearing this, decided to retreat.

Intermediate, N.S.W.

(a) I am not allowed to be absent from home after sunset.

(b) If I had told you that they were Romans would you have believed me?

(c) Having set out from Clusium, a powerful city of the Etrusci, Porsena led an army against Rome in order to restore Tarquinius to the kingdom from which, not long before, he had been expelled. Although he knew well that the Romans were far from cowardly, Porsena believed, not without reason, that he would have no difficulty in taking the city. "Not even the bravest soldiers," he said, "if they are few, can resist for long so great an army." It is said, however, that Rome was saved, in the end, by the courage not of all her soldiers but of one man.

Intermediate, N.S.W.

(a) Do you not believe that the Britons used chariots in battle?

(b) Three days afterwards the Nervii, having abandoned their camp, fled into their own territory.

(c) Resist the enemy bravely, so that you may not be defeated.

(d) After he had conquered a large part of Gaul, Caesar resolved to cross the sea into Britain, because he knew that the Britons had helped the Gauls in all the wars which he had waged against them. Having assembled many ships, he embarked with two legions and came in a few hours to the coast of Britain. The barbarians were present with so large an army that our men were at first afraid to leave the ships. At length the soldier who carried the eagle of the tenth legion showed them the way. When he had jumped into the water, the rest of the troops followed him in order that the eagle might not be captured by the enemy.

Intermediate, N.S.W.

5.

(a) The horsemen reported that Caesar, after building a strong bridge, had led an army across the Rhine.

(b) If I had denied this, you would not have believed me.

(c) Bassus was now thirty years old, and had shown in many battles that he was a very brave soldier. When the Roman army had encamped near the river Mosa, Caesar sent him out by night with eleven companions, whom Bassus himself had chosen, to reconnoitre the region which lay between the river and the hills. While these men were proceeding through a wood, suddenly a shout was heard, and the enemy ran out from an ambuscade. Bassus ordered the others to retreat, and himself resisted the enemy so bravely that they were able to make good their escape.

Intermediate, N.S.W.

6.

(a) Caesar told Labienus why he had resolved to return to Italy.

(b) If you wish to be praised you must do the work well and quickly.

(c) Two thousand of our men, under the command of Tullius, were encamped in the territory of the Sequani, not far from a larger force of the enemy. At nightfall word was brought that allies of the Sequani, numbering five hundred, had arrived at the further bank of a neighbouring river, and had prepared rafts in order that they might cross the river at daybreak. If they had done this, the Romans would have been in great danger. Faustinus, however, swam across by night and cut the ropes by which the rafts were tied to the bank, so that the rafts were carried away by the stream.

Intermediate, N.S.W.

7.

1. Where shall we go to-morrow?
2. They cannot all be unworthy.
3. How did you get the money you have?
4. We saw that the children had been well taught.
5. I do not think the enemy will beat us.
6. My friend and I were born in the same year.
7. Caesar freed the prisoners and sent them home.
8. Let us seek a gift for our father.
9. I sent a man to warn you about the danger.

Junior, W.A.

8.

(a) Having finished the work, we ran as quickly as possible to the top of the hill.

(b) Thence we were able to see what was going on.

(c) Did he not promise to come to the country with us?

(d) We cannot doubt that the enemy are setting out against us.

(e) Do not despise, my friend, the counsels of your father.

(f) If they had come, no one would have been able to resist them.

(g) He told us to take care that no one should enter the city.

Intermediate, Vic.

9.

Translate into Latin:—

(a) Caesar hastened to set out for Britain.

(b) They cultivated the fields there for forty years.

(c) He chose a place for the camp and fortified it.

(d) The foreigners prevented our men from disembarking.

(e) Give hostages to the conqueror.

(f) We learnt that the Britons had been conquered last summer.

(g) They all returned to the city to pass the winter.

(h) When he noticed this, the general ordered the line to go forward.

(i) I promise to start at midday.

(j) If you had hidden yourself in the wood, you would have been safe.

(k) There were so many men on the road that no one could cross it.

Intermediate S.A.

10.

(a) The infantry advanced three miles, halted, and began to prepare to encamp.

(b) When the boy saw his mother, he burst into tears.

(c) He was the first that ever burst into that silent sea.

(d) Encouraging one another, the women in a body rushed forward.

(e) Men behave differently from women.

(f) My purpose holds to sail beyond the sunset.

P.S. Exam., N.Z.

11.

(a) Having reached the city, he called together his friends.

(b) He warned Antonius not to lead an army into these places.

(c) He promised to send great forces.

(d) So great was the tumult that nobody could hear the words of the general.

(e) Tell me why he remained at Rome.

(f) They will try to prevent us from marching into your territory.

(g) Do you not think that their army is very strong?

(h) If he had enrolled (conscribere) so great an army, no one would have resisted him.

Intermediate, Vic.

12.

(a) Quintus was not allowed to depart from the city before midday.

(b) We did not know where the hostages had been hidden.

(c) Do not imitate (imitor) the habits of evil men.

(d) If you heard their harsh (asper) voices, you would fear them.

(e) I have seen no land more fertile than the plains of Gaul.

(f) The merchants went to that region to buy sheep.

(g) They told me that the temple of Iuppiter was burned.

Intermediate, Vic.

13.

(a) He informed me that they had returned from Tarentum.

(b) He hopes to remain a few months at Rome.

(c) Who can say where I can find them?

(d) Do not go with them; come with us to Carthage.

(e) He will prevent them from crossing the river.

(f) He exhorted them to take up arms for the sake of liberty.

(g) If he had come to our help, no one would have been able to conquer us.

Intermediate, Vic.

14.

(a) When Caesar heard this he hastened towards the enemy with three hundred cavalry.

(b) The legions advanced as quickly as possible and pitched camp on the top of a hill.

(c) There they awaited the attack of the enemy, who were not more than two miles distant (to be distant, abesse).

(d) On arriving they boasted that they were much stronger than our men. (To boast, gloriari.)

(e) Our men, however, were not afraid of being beaten by barbarians.

Intermediate, N.Z.

(a) When Divitiacus had spoken, all who were present began to beg Caesar to help them.

(b) He noticed that the Sequani alone were not doing the same thing as the rest, and asked them why they were so dejected.

(c) Divitiacus replied that the fate of the Sequani was harder than that of others, because they did not dare to complain.

(d) Moreover, he said, they were unable to avoid the cruelty of Ariovistus, and had no place in which they could take refuge.

(e) Caesar assured them that he would persuade Ariovistus to put an end to his wrong-doing at once. (Wrong-doing, iniuria.)

(f) Have the legions been ordered to halt, or are they still marching at full speed towards the enemy?

Intermediate, N.Z.

15.

(a) I will never return to Thebes until the laws have been so changed that the citizens are free.

(b) Do you wish me to tell you what I think you should do?

(c) If ever you learn why I acted in that way you will be sorry that you spoke so harshly.

(d) When Charmides at last reached home he saw one of his slaves coming out of a shed. This man informed him that his children were alive and well, and Charmides, after thanking the gods, said, "Let us now go inside, so that I may inquire about other matters at my leisure." But the slave replied: "Do not go into the house, master: it is no longer yours; you must come with me to this shed, where your son Lesbonicus now lives."

Junior, Q.

16.

(a) I cannot understand why you did not promise to do what he wished.

(b) We must try to discover if he returned home yesterday.

(c) If I fall in the battle, do not mourn for me, and do not lay down your arms till our country is saved.

(d) Menaechmus, having set out from Syracuse to find his twin brother, travelled through many countries, and at last reached Epidamnus. It happened that his brother was living in this town. The twins resembled one another so closely that even Pamphila herself did not know which was her own husband. She invited the Syracusan Menaechmus to come into the house, made him eat the lunch which she had prepared, and when he was leaving handed him a gold necklace. This she asked him to take to the jeweller so that it might be repaired.

Junior, Q.

17

(a) These things were all done with great haste.

(b) We learned that the general had decided to help the allies.

(c) If this had happened yesterday, the tribunes would have been angry with us.

(d) The brave leader tried hard to urge his men on.

(e) They were so weary that they could not sleep.

(f) Do you wish to know why he made this announcement?

(g) That same night news reached Tusculum of the capture of the citadel, and the seizure of the Capitol. Lucius Manilius was then dictator of Tusculum. He at once summoned the senate, and, having introduced the messengers, strongly urged that they should not wait until the ambassadors should come from Rome requesting help.

Leaving Certificate, S.A.

18.

Cirta was the capital of Syphax' kingdom, and it was thither that the vast host of fugitives betook themselves. The losses of the enemy were insignificant considering the magnitude of our victory, since the struggle had been entirely confined to the cavalry. Not more than five thousand were killed, while less than half that total were captured in the attack upon the camp, where large numbers had taken refuge in the panic occasioned by the loss of their king. Masinissa asserted that, while

there was nothing that could have given him greater joy than to visit his ancestral kingdom, triumphantly recovered after so many years, delay was as dangerous in the hour of victory as in defeat; if Laelius would permit him to advance on Cirta with the cavalry and to take Syphax with him in chains, he anticipated that he would be able to surprise the enemy before they had recovered from the confusion of their flight.

Leaving Certificate, W.A.

19

(a) Ten men were chosen to draw up the laws.

(b) After the war in Spain was finished, the consul returned to Rome in triumph.

(c) Next day ambassadors came to ask why their friends had been wronged.

(d) Do not prevent the poor man from approaching the officer.

(e) If any one were to offer you money, would you accept it?

(f) The princes of these nations came to Alexander promising to obey his orders, and declaring that he was the third son of Iuppiter come down to them. The king received these men kindly, and bade them follow him, intending to use them as guides. But, as no one else met him he sent forward two of his captains with part of the forces to subdue those who opposed his rule, and commanded them to make boats with which to convey the army across the river.

Leaving Certificate, S.A.

20.

(a) After four years the forces of the Samnites were destroyed by the consul Cornelius.

(b) He defeated the Africans in so many battles that the conquered foe was compelled to seek peace from the Romans.

(c) He could not prevent the greedy soldiers from dividing the money.

(d) Are you not afraid of being thought too cruel?

(e) Let us always be willing to hear the other side.

(f) As they were returning with a victorious fleet, the consuls suffered shipwreck in the neighbourhood of Sicily.

(g) When the dictator saw that the victory was now within his grasp, and that there would be more booty than in all the previous wars, in order that he might not incur the ill will of the patricians from a lavish distribution, he sent a despatch to the senate stating that by the favour of Heaven, by his own strategy, and by the perseverance of the soldiers the hostile city would soon be in the hands of the Roman people. He asked what they thought should be done with the spoil.

Leaving Certificate, S.A.

21.

(a) I stayed at home because I was unwell.

(b) You will not finish this task, my son, unless you work hard.

(c) Do not try to follow a base leader.

(d) Whenever those who have read what the historians tell us, visit Britain, they go to see the famous tower.

(e) The old man, seeing the robbers, feared he would lose his money.

(f) Can any place be dearer to you than your own country?

(g) The king went with a small number of cavalry to a higher position to discover what fortune his army had on the right flank, but when he saw them scattered in flight he withdrew from the line. The Roman general hotly pursued the retreating foe, but when they saw that there was no hope left, they surrendered, and the Roman, not wishing to use cruelty, decided to spare them.

Leaving Certificate, S.A.

22.

Caesar remained for a few days in their country, burned all their villages and homesteads, and returned to the territory of the Ubii. Promising to help them in case they were attacked by the Suebi, he ascertained from them that the latter, on learning from their scouts that the bridge was being made, had called a council according to their custom, and sent messengers in all directions to tell the people to abandon the towns, hide their wives and children and all their belongings in the forests and assemble—all of them who could bear arms—at one place; this place was nearly in the centre of the region occupied by the Suebi; here they were awaiting the arrival of the Romans, and here they had determined to fight them. Caesar had achieved every object for which he had determined to lead his army across the Rhine, namely, to inspire fear in the Germans, take revenge on the Sugambri, and release the Ubii from the blockade; he felt that honour was satisfied and that he had served every useful purpose. When, therefore, he heard the news about the Suebi, he returned to Gaul after spending eighteen days altogether across the Rhine.

Leaving Certificate, Tas.

23.

Having recovered Capua, Hannibal made an attempt to win over Naples, but failed. He then led his army into the neighbourhood of Nola, without, however, ravaging their land; and sent ambassadors to say that if they joined him they should suffer no harm; whereas if they refused he would visit their land with all the horrors of war. The senate and the chief men were in favour of persisting in the Roman alliance, but the common people, in their anxiety to avoid the sufferings of a siege, wished to join the Carthaginians. In these straits the senate pretended to agree with them, and declared that the only doubtful point was the terms of the alliance. They said, therefore, they would send an embassy to Hannibal, but as soon as the deputation was out of sight of the city, they betook themselves to the Roman camp: and thus, warned of the proposed surrender, the consul in the course of the night threw a body of troops into the city, and kept it faithful to Rome.

Leaving Certificate, Tas.

24.

When, however, they saw the tower moving and approaching the walls, the strange spectacle alarmed them, and they sent envoys to Caesar to sue for peace. The envoys said that the Roman soldiers were evidently aided by the gods, since they could move such a high tower with such speed, and declared that they were ready to surrender. One thing they said, they begged of him—if he exercised (utor) that compassion (misericordia), of which they had heard from others and decided to spare them—not to deprive them of their arms, for

almost all their neighbours were hostile to them and envied them their valour, and if they surrendered their arms, they could not defend themselves. Caesar replied to this that he would spare the tribe, not because they were deserving of compassion, but because it was his custom to pity the conquered, if they surrendered before the ram (aries) touched the wall; but he could offer (fero) no terms of surrender unless they gave up their arms. He would do what he had done in the case of the Nervii, and would order their neighbours not to injure those who had surrendered to the Roman people. The envoys after reporting the matter to their countrymen, said they were ready to obey his orders.

Leaving Certificate, Tas.

25.

There was in Darius's army a Macedonian exile, named Amyntas, who knew Alexander's character. When this man heard that Darius intended to advance through the pass to fight the enemy, he advised him earnestly to remain where he was, in the broad and open plains, since he was about to fight so vast a host against a smaller force. Darius told him he was afraid the enemy would endeavour to run away and Alexander would escape. "Do not be afraid of that," said Amyntas, "you may be sure he will hasten to meet you and will be already on the march." But he could not persuade Darius to take his advice; for Darius immediately left his camp and marched into Cilicia at the same time that Alexander was advancing into Syria to meet him. Alexander, greatly pleased at this, was eager to fight him in the pass; while Darius tried to extricate his forces from it. For now he saw that he had been foolish in marching into a position where the sea, the mountains, and the river Pinarus, which flows through the midst of it, would compel him to divide his forces and would make it impossible to use his cavalry.

Leaving Certificate, Tas.

26.

The Scottish chiefs declared with one voice they would deliver their country from slavery and follow their leader against the foreign enemy. Cummin alone, who had secretly conspired with the King of England, tried to persuade them not to throw off their allegiance nor violate the treaty made some years before. Bruce, already informed of his treachery, and thinking that the danger would be great if there remained a traitor in their midst, summoning a few comrades, attacked him as he passed through a certain street, and running him through the body, left him dead on the ground. One of Bruce's friends asking him soon after if the traitor was slain, "I believe so," replied the leader. "And is that a matter," exclaimed the other, "that should be left uncertain? I will make sure." Upon that he drew his sword, returned to the body, and ran him through again.

Leaving Certificate, W.A.

27.

After the disaster at Cannae, men were saying that Rome was doomed, and certain of the younger patricians, headed by L. Caecilius Metellus, were proposing to escape overseas and seek service with some foreign king. Most of the leaders were in dismay. But while others urged the calling of a council to deliberate upon the situation, Scipio declared that action, not deliberation, was needed, and that those who desired the safety of the state should attend him in arms forthwith. With

only a few companions, he went straight to Metellus' lodging, surprising the plotters in council. Drawing his sword, he swore that he would neither desert the cause of Rome nor allow any other citizen of Rome to do so. He insisted that Caecilius and the rest should take the same oath, threatening any one who demurred with the determined words, "This sword is drawn against you." According to Livy, they were as terrified as if the redoubtable Hannibal stood before them. The result was that all took the oath and surrendered into Scipio's custody.

Leaving Certificate, W.A.

28.

In the meantime the Allobroges had sent an embassy to Rome to beg the senate to help them. Gabinius and the rest of the conspirators hoped to persuade the Allobroges to furnish cavalry to Catiline for a war in Italy. The envoys disclosed the whole matter to Cicero, and were instructed to endeavour to obtain if possible written documents from the conspirators. Such was the stupidity of Lentulus and his associates that they gave the Gauls letters, addressed to the senate and people of the Allobroges, in which they undertook to perform what they had promised verbally to the envoys, and urged the Allobroges in turn to send the assistance which their envoys had promised. The Gauls were told to visit Catiline on their way home and they bore with them a letter from Lentulus to Catiline, in which he advised him to admit slaves into his army. By the evening of the 2nd of December all was settled, and the Allobroges started on their homeward journey that night. They were accompanied by Volturcius, one of the conspirators, and attended by a considerable escort.

Leaving Certificate, Tas.

29.

When it was reported at Rome that the envoys who had been sent into Greece had been killed, there was great anger among the people. The Greeks, indeed, asserted that the men had been slain by foreign brigands; but the Roman dictator Mussolinus said that, even if this were true, nevertheless the Greeks were worthy of blame, because they had not protected the envoys. He therefore ordered them to pay a large sum of money to the Romans and to suffer other penalties, and sent a fleet to occupy the island of Corcyra. Although many thought that Mussolinus was unjust, the Greeks after a few days paid the money which he had demanded, and the Roman fleet returned to Italy.

Leaving Certificate, N.S.W.

30.

Pompey learning what had happened and fearing that he might lose Dyrrachium hurried thither with all speed. It was reported that Caesar was approaching, and so great terror fell on Pompey's army that many flung away their arms and the march seemed like a flight. When Pompey halted, Labienus was the first to come forward and swear that he would not desert the standards. He exhorted the rest to do the same, and there was no one who was unwilling to take the oath. Meanwhile Caesar had pitched his camp near the river Apsus, hoping to be able to protect the neighbouring towns. He determined to wait there for a few days, for he thought that the rest of his legions would soon be sent from Italy.

Leaving Certificate, N.S.W.

31.

About this time the Siculi, who had been gradually driven back from the coast into the inner parts of the island, tried again to recover both their lands and their freedom. Their leader was a man of their own people, named Ducetius, whom they called King of the Siculi. Ducetius being hard pressed by the Syracusans, betook himself to Syracuse as a suppliant and was ordered to spend the rest of his life at Corinth. There, however, an oracle bade him return to Sicily and found a colony of Greeks on the "Beautiful Shore." Thus was founded on the north coast of Sicily, than which none is more beautiful, the town of Caleacte or Calacte, the name of which means "Beautiful Shore."

Leaving Certificate, N.S.W.

32

Sempronius believed that the republic was in the gravest danger, and hastened back from Tusculum to Rome. The journey was not long, so that before nightfall he was already in the city. He decided to go at once to the consul Cornelius, a man of great probity and sagacity, and to tell him what had been done that day at Tusculum. But the conspirators, when they discovered that Sempronius had set out suddenly for Rome, ordered two desperadoes to pursue him swiftly; and these overtook him when he was about to enter Cornelius' house and assassinated him. The assassins,[1] however, were seized and brought to Cornelius, to whom, in order to save themselves they revealed the whole conspiracy.

Leaving Certificate, N.S.W.

[1] Sicarii.

33

When he was leading the Thebans against the Lacedaemonians[1] Epaminondas retained his command four months longer than the law allowed. When he had vanquished the enemy and returned to Thebes[2] he was brought to trial. After the accusers had spoken Epaminondas confessed that he had violated the law, and said that he was willing to be put to death if the judges condemned him. He asked the judges, however, to inscribe these words upon his tomb: "Epaminondas was put to death by the Thebans because he compelled them to overcome the Lacedaemonians and because in one battle he not only saved Thebes from destruction, but also secured the freedom of all Greece." After he had said this, everybody laughed and Epaminondas was set free.

Leaving Certificate, N.S.W.

34

Dido, as Vergilius relates, was the sister of Pygmalion, king of the Tyrii, and was married to a rich man named Sychaeus, whom Pygmalion murdered in order to gain possession of his wealth. Thereupon Dido, with many others who hated the cruel tyrant, sailed away to Africa and built there a new city which was named Carthage. About the same time Aeneas had escaped from Troia, which had been captured by the Greeks; and while he was on his way to Italy he was driven on to the coast of Africa by a great storm. Arriving at Carthage, he was received very kindly by the queen, who fell in love with him and desired him to remain there. However, Iuppiter commanded him to leave Carthage and resume the voyage to Italy.

Leaving Certificate, N.S.W.

[1] Lacedaemonii. [2] Thebae (Fem. plur.).

35

Marius applied to Metellus for leave of absence, so that he might proceed to Rome and offer himself as a candidate for the consulship. The consul at first tried to dissuade him from his presumptuous attempt, by pointing out the certainty of failure; and when he could not prevail upon him to abandon his design, he pleaded the exigencies of the public service, which required Marius' presence and assistance. At last, when Marius persisted, he exclaimed "You need not hurry; it will be quite time enough for you to apply for the consulship along with my son." The latter, who was then serving with the army, was a youth of only twenty years of age, and could not, therefore, become a candidate for the consulship for more than twenty years. This insult was never forgotten by Marius. He now began to intrigue against Metellus, and to spread the absurd report that the war was purposely prolonged by him to gratify his love of power.

Leaving Certificate (Hons.), N.S.W.

36

"To arms!" was the cry. A few cohorts were detached to guard the camp and the baggage, which there was no time to remove; the rest hurriedly fell in, and moved straight on towards Octogesa. A desperate race then began. Caesar's legions were marching through a trackless region, up hill and down dale, and sometimes they were confronted by rocky declivities so steep that men could scarcely ascend; but they had got a start, every man was doing his utmost, and the cavalry relentlessly dogged the Afranians, who, moreover, must have been distracted by the thought that if they escaped disaster and attained their goal, their baggage and the cohorts which protected it would be sacrificed. Caesar won the race, and emerging from the rocks, wheeled his legions into line of battle on the plain.

Leaving Certificate (Hons.), N.S.W.

37

The general who was finally successful in crushing the revolt was Gnaeus Pompeius, who had been for some time known as a brave and skilful officer and now became the leading man in the state. He received the proconsular command in Spain before he had reached the age of 30, and therefore before he had held the ordinary state offices. He had never been a hearty adherent of Sulla, and now on his return from Spain being desirous of the honour of a triumph, to which he was not legally entitled, he definitely broke with the Sullan party and espoused the cause of the opposition. By their aid he gained the consulship and triumph. Pompey's colleague in the consulship was M. Crassus. Under these two leaders the popular cause was again in the ascendant; but the old republic was practically dead, and the substance of power lay in the hands of the strongest military leader.

Leaving Certificate (Hons.), N.S.W.

38

It is not surprising that Sicily, which was not only very big and very rich, but also lay in the centre of the civilized world became the prize and battleground of nations. Antiquity had two great colonizing races, the Phoenicians and the Greeks. The former were the keenest and most skilful traders of their time, and were the most daring mariners of an age when "they that went down to the sea in ships" owed thanks to their gods if the tiny, crazy craft brought them safe to shore. These were the men who, in quest of riches, ventured out between the Pillars of Hercules and over the stormy waters of Ocean even unto the sea that we call the Baltic; and a thousand years before the birth of Christ there were few coasts on which they had not planted settlements. Of all the Phoenician colonies Carthage became the greatest.

Leaving Certificate (Hons.), N.S.W.

39

While Cato was subduing some of the tribes and winning over others by diplomacy, a great host of barbarians fell upon him and threatened to drive him disgracefully out of the province. He therefore begged the neighbouring Celtiberi to become his allies. On their demanding two hundred talents pay for such assistance, all the others thought it intolerable that Romans should consent to pay barbarians for assistance. But Cato said that there was nothing terrible in it; should they be victorious they could pay the price with the spoils taken from the enemy; whereas, should they be vanquished there would be nobody left either to pay or to demand the price. In this battle he was completely victorious, and the rest of his campaign was a brilliant success. Cato himself boasts that he took more cities than he spent days in Spain.

Leaving Certificate (Hons.), N.S.W.

40

Brutus fled to the mountains with a considerable force, intending to return to his camp by night or else to move down to the sea. But since all the roads were guarded, he passed the night in the mountains under arms with all his men. The next day, seeing that the enemy were still lying in wait for him, he asked his officers whether they were willing to force a passage through the enemy's lines in order to regain the camp. They replied that they had tempted fortune many times and that Brutus must now look out for himself. Then Brutus said "I am no longer useful to my country, if such is the temper of these men;" and he ordered his friend Strato to kill him with a sword. Thus died Brutus, one of the most illustrious of Romans, a man who would have been incomparable in virtue had he not committed the unpardonable crime of slaying his friend and benefactor.

Leaving Certificate (Hons.), N.S.W.

41

Now the hour of sunset was near, for a good deal of time had passed while Socrates was within. When he returned he sat down with us again, and not much was said. Soon the jailer entered and said "You, Socrates, who are the noblest and best of all who ever came to this place, will not be angry with me when, in obedience to the authorities, I beg you to drink the poison, for others and not I bear the blame. Farewell, and try to bear lightly what must needs be: you know my errand." Then bursting into tears, he turned away. But Socrates said to us "What a good fellow he is! Since I have been in prison he has always been coming to see me, and at times he would talk to me; and see how generously he now sorrows for me. We must do as he says: let the cup be brought." So Crito made a sign to the servant who was present, bidding him fetch the jailer.

Leaving Certificate (Hons.), N.S.W.

42

After Sulla had left Rome the two consuls began to quarrel, one being on the side of Sulla, the other on the side of Marius. At last Cinna, who was Marius' consul, gathered an army and brought Marius back. Marius had had many troubles in trying to escape from Italy. The sailors of a ship on which he wished to go to Africa persuaded him to land near Minturnae, and then sailed away and left him. He was pursued and taken prisoner, though he had tried to hide himself by standing up to the chin in a marsh. He was put in

prison at Minturnae, and the magistrates sent a Gaulish slave to put him to death in prison; but when the slave came to Marius the old man's eyes flashed so terribly through the dark prison as he said, "Fellow, darest thou kill Gaius Marius?" that the man dropped his sword and ran away. Then the magistrates were ashamed, and let Marius go. He crossed over to Africa, but he had no sooner landed than he was warned by the magistrates to go away.

L.C. (Hons.), S.A.

43

The remnant of the vast army of the East was scattered far and wide. No reserve had been provided on the field, no place assigned for rallying at a distance. Even the naval force was dispersed or distant. Pompeius rushed through Larissa, hurried down the vale of Tempe to the mouth of the Peneus, took ship on board a merchant vessel with a handful of attendants, and gained the island of Lesbos, whither he had removed his wife Cornelia. Running thence along the coast of Asia, he picked up a few adherents, and held council with them, chiefly, it would seem, about his own personal safety. His first idea of seeking an asylum at the court of Parthia was indignantly overruled. To take refuge with the king of Egypt, a dependent of the republic, was deemed both safer and less dishonourable. The wealth of Egypt was unbounded and its position wellnigh inaccessible to an enemy destitute of a fleet.

L.C. (Hons.), S.A.

44

He had not penetrated more than a league, when he found his conjecture verified by the sight of an Indian town of larger size than those he had hitherto seen, occupying the brow of an eminence, and well defended by palisades. The inhabitants, as usual, had fled, but left in their dwellings a good supply of provisions and some gold trinkets, which the Spanish made no difficulty of appropriating to themselves. Pizarro's flimsy barque had been strained by the heavy gales it had of late encountered, so that it was unsafe to prosecute the voyage further without more thorough repairs than could be given to her on this desolate coast. He accordingly determined to send her back with a few hands to be careened at Panama, and meanwhile to establish his quarters in his present position, which was so favourable for defence. But first he despatched a small party under Montenegro to reconnoitre the country, and, if possible, to open a communication with the natives.

L.C. (Hons.), S.A.

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY

EXERCISE 1.

citizen, **cīvis, -is,** (*m*).
praetor, **praetor, -ōris,** (*m*).
vote, **suffrāgium, -iī,** (*n*).
century, **centuria, -ae,** (*f*).
leader=chief man, **princeps, -ipis,** (*m*).
=general, **dux, ducis,** (*m*).
=commander-in-chief (Roman), **imperātor, -ōris,** (*m*).
senate, **senātus, -ūs,** (*m*).
army, **exercitus, -ūs** (*m*).
soldier, **mīles, -itis,** (*m*).
tenth, **decimus, -a, -um.**
legion, **legiō, -iōnis,** (*f*).
king, **rēx, rēgis,** (*m*).
friend, **amicus, -ī,** (*m*).
Caesar, **Caesar, -aris,** (*m*).
Cicero, **Cicerō, -ōnis,** (*m*).
good, **bonus, -a, -um.**
consul, **cōnsul, -sulis,** (*m*).
few, **paucī, -ae, -a.**
Aedui, **Aeduī, -ōrum.**
brave, **fortis, -e.**
because, **quod.**
senator, **senātor, -ōris,** (*m*).
traitor, **prōditor, -ōris,** (*m*).
elect, **creō, 1.**
be made or to become, **fīō, fierī, factus sum.**
call, **appellō, 1.**
choose, **ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum.**
consider, **existimō, 1.**
all, **omnis, -e.**
Metellus, **Metellus, -ī** (*m*)

EXERCISE 2.

book, **liber, librī** (*m*).
master, **magister, -trī** (*m*).
letters, **litterae, -ārum** (*f*).
slave, **servus, -ī** (*m*).
money, **pecūnia, -ae** (*f*).
but, **sed.**
wise, **sapiēns, -entis.**
Marius, **Marius, -iī** (*m*).
just (*adv.*), **modo.**
opinion, **sententia, -ae** (*f*).
ambassador, **lēgātus, -ī** (*m*).
peace, **pāx, pācis** (*f*).
forces, **cōpiae, -ārum** (*f. pl.*).
across, **trāns** (*acc.*).
Rhine, **Rhēnus, -i** (*m*).
victor, **victor, -ōris** (*m*).
ask, **rogō, 1. interrogō, 1.** (double acc. or de + abl.)
flāgitō, 1. (double acc. rare —usu. acc. of thing and ab +abl. of person.)=demand.
petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum (acc. of thing, ab + abl. of person)=to seek.
postulō, 1. (acc. of thing ab + abl. of person.) =demand.
quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum (ex, ab, de + abl of person.)=seek.
have, **habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.**
hide, **cēlō, 1.**

teach, **doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum.**
deem, **putō 1.**
hail or greet, **salūtō, 1.**
lead, **dūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum.**

EXERCISE 3.

Romans, **Rōmānī, -ōrum** (*m*).
beginning, **initium, -iī** (*n*) **origō, -inis** (*f*).
city, **urbs, urbis** (*f*).
god, **deus, -ī** (*m*).
Mars, **Mars, -tis** (*m*).
for, **nam.**
war, **bellum, -ī** (*n*).
always, **semper.**
race, **gēns, -tis** (*f*).
warlike, **bellicōsus, -a, -um.**
and so, **itaque.**
story, **fābula, -ae** (*f*).
memory, **memoria, -ae** (*f*).
daughter, **filia, -ae** (*f*).
twin, **geminus, -a, -um.**
son, **filius, -iī** (*m*).
and, **et,**[1] **-que, atque.**
father, **pater, -tris** (*m*).
boy, **puer, -ī** (*m*).
order, **iussum, -ī** (*n*).
box, **arca, -ae** (*f*).
river, **flūmen, -inis** (*n*).
into, **in** (*acc.*).
to trace back, **referō, -ferre, -tulī,** (**rettulī** better), **-lātum.**
be, **sum, esse, fuī.**
hand down, **trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
bear (children), **pariō, -ere, peperī, partum.**
hate, **ōdī, ōdisse** (pf. stem only).
place, **pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.**
throw, **iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum.**
uncle (father's brother), **patruus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 4.

whereupon, **quō factō.**
by chance, **cāsū, fortē.**
water, **aqua, -ae** (*f*).
deep, **altus, -a, -um.**
indeed, **autem** (never used as first word in a clause).
certain, **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam.**
shepherd, **pastor, -ōris** (*m*).
cottage, **casa -ae** (*f*).
there, **ibi.**
wife, **uxor, -ōris** (*f*).
kindly, **benīgnus, -a -um**
mother, **māter, -tris** (*f*).
young man, **iuvenis, -is** (*m*)
when, **ubi.**
clever, **callidus, -a, -um.**
often, **saepe.**
against, **contrā** (*acc.*).
robber, **latrō, -ōnis** (*m*).
however, **tamen, autem.**
large, **māgnus, -a, -um.**
band, **manus, -ūs** (*f*).
be angry, **graviter ferō, ferre, tulī, latum** (*acc.*).
Remus, **Remus, -ī** (*m*).
Romulus **Rōmulus, -ī** (*m*).

[1] et merely joins words and clauses: -que combines two words into one idea: atque indicates that what follows is of more importance than what precedes.

drown, **submergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersum.**
find, **inveniō, īre, -vēnī -ventum.**
find (after search), **reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum**
carry, **portō, 1.**
give, **dō, dare, dedī, datum.**
bring up, **ēducō, 1.**
prove, show oneself, **mē praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.**
fight, **pugnō, 1** (*intrans.*).
capture, **capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.**
take (i.e. conduct), **addūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum.**
collect, **colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum.**
hurry, **festīnō, 1** (*intrans.*).
wise, **prūdēns, -ntis.**
Laurentia, **Laurentia, -ae** (*f*)

EXERCISE 5.

tribune, **tribūnus, -ī** (*m*).
people, **plebs, -is** (*f*)
disgraceful, **turpis, -e.**
deed, **facinus, -oris** (*n*).
love, **amō, 1.**
remain, **maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.**
commit, **committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.**
come, **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum.**
go, **eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum.** (So all compounds of eo.)
here, **hīc.**
guide, **dūcō, dūcere, duxī, ductum.**

EXERCISE 6.

now, **iam** (already), **nunc** (at this moment).
form a plan, **cōnsilium ineō** (or **capiō**).
run, **currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum.**
return (*intrans.*), **redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.**
state, **cīvitās, -ātis** (*f*)
town, **oppidum, -ī** (*n*).
from, by, **ā, ab** (+ *abl.*).

EXERCISE 7.

brother, **frāter, -tris** (*m*).
prison, **carcer, -eris** (*m*).
grandson, **nepōs, -ōtis** (*m*)
arrival, **adventus, -ūs** (*m*).
place, **locus, -ī** (*m*)
rescue, **līberō, 1.**
about (i.e. concerning), **dē** (+ *abl.*).
enquire, **quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum.**
guard, **custōdiō, 4.**
recognise, **āgnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.**
learn, **cōgnoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.**
join, **mē coniungō -ere, -iunxī, -iunctum** (*cum.* + *abl.*).
attack, **aggredior, aggredī, aggressus sum.**
slay, **occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.**
know, **sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.**
be able, **possum, posse, potuī,** (+ *infin.*).
with, **cum.** (+ *abl.*).

EXERCISE 8.

barbarian, **barbarus, -ī** (*m*)
rule, **regō, -ere, rexī, rectum.**
conquer, **superō, 1.**
already, **iam.**
ready, **parātus, -a -um.**
every year, **quotannis** (*adv.*).

EXERCISE 9.

Carthaginian, **Carthāginiēnsis, -e** (*adj.*), or **Poenus, -ī** (*m*).
win a victory, **victōriam reportō, 1.**
honourable, **honestus, -a, -um.**
remain, **commoror, commorārī, commorātus sum.**
conquer, **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum.**
at last, **tandem.**
Sulla, **Sulla, -ae** (*m*).
leave, **discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum** (*ab.* + *abl.*).
to-morrow, **crās,** (*adv.*).

EXERCISE 10.

birth, **ortus, -ūs** (*m*).
together, **ūnā** (*adv.*).
the past, **praeterita** (*n pl.*).
near, **prope** (+ *acc.*).
so great, **tantus, -a, -um.**
found, **condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
suffer, **patior, patī, passus sum.**
bind (by affection), **iungō, -ere, iunxī, iunctum.**
quarrel, **iurgō, 1.**
kill, **interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**

EXERCISE 11.

arms, **arma, -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
bravely, **fortiter.**
word, **verbum, -ī** (*n*).
Marcus, **Marcus, -ī** (*m*).
ability, **ingenium, -iī** (*n*).
to-day, **hodiē.**
unjust, **iniustus, -a, -um.**
coward, **ignāvus, -a, -um** (may be used as noun).
follow, **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.**
throw away, **abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.**
obey, **pāreō, -ēre, -uī,** (**-itum**), (*dat.*).
or **obtemperō, 1** (*dat.*).
learn, **discō, -ere, didicī.**
advance, **progredior, progredī, progressus sum.**
listen to, **audiō, 4.**
command, **iussum, -ī** (*n*).
bad, **improbus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 12.

thus, **hōc modō.**
sluggishly, **sēgniter** (*adv.*).
office, **dīgnitās -ātis** (*f*).
at once, **statim.**
standard, **signum, -ī** (*n*).
say, **dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum.**
lose (opportunity), **āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.**
opportunity, **occāsiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
fly, **fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum.**
desire, **cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.**
whip, **verberō, 1.**
children, **līberī, -ōrum** (*m pl.*).
kill (murder), **necō, 1.**
do, **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.**

EXERCISE 13.

safe from, **tūtus, -a, -um** (*ab* + *abl.*).
fear, **timeō, -ēre, -uī.**
message, **nuntius, -ī** (*m*).
ruined, **perditus, -a, -um.**
neighbouring, **vīcinus, -a, -um.**
refuge, **perfugium, -ī** (*n*).
enemy, **hostis, -is** (*m*).
for (on behalf of), **prō** (*abl.*).
freedom, **lībertās, -ātis** (*f*).
family, **familia, -ae** (*f*).
patrician, **patricius, -iī** (*m*).
build, **aedificō, 1.**
send, **mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.**
live, **habitō, 1.**
delay, **moror, 1.**
set out, **proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum.**
unhappy, **miser, -era, -erum.**
work, **labōrō 1.**
new, **novus, -a, -um.**
free (*adj.*), **līber, lībera, liberum.**
he said (see note, page 39).

EXERCISE 14.

Rome, **Rōma, ae** (*f*).
Tibur, **Tībur, -uris** (*n*).
Faesulae, **Faesulae, -ārum** (*f*).
Gaul, **Gallia, -ae** (*f*).
Sicily, **Sicilia, -ae** (*f*).
Carthage, **Carthāgō, -inis** (*f*).
country (opposed to town), **rūs, rūris** (*n*).
courage, **virtūs, -ūtis** (*f*).
wall, **mūrus, -ī** (*m*).
moenia, -ium (*n. pl.*).
yesterday, **heri.**
farm, **fundus, -ī** (*m*).
home, **domus, -ūs** (*f*).
intend, **in animō habeō.**
climb, **ascendō, -ere, -cendī -censum.**
march, **contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum.**
bring (a message), **afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum.**
defeat, **vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum.**
camp, **castra, -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
pitch a camp, **castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.**
Pisae, **Pīsae, -ārum** (*f*).
Baiae, **Baiae, -ārum** (*f*).
Italy, **Italia, -ae** (*f*).
Brundisium, **Brundisium, -iī** (*n*).
Hannibal, **Hannibal, -alis** (*m*).
the rest, **reliquī, reliquae, reliqua; cēterī, -ae, -a.**
a Gaul, **Gallus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 15.

Greece, **Graecia, -ae** (*f*).
Athens, **Athēnae, -ārum** (*f. pl.*)
Spain, **Hispānia, -ae** (*f*).
Syracuse, **Syrācūsae, -ārum** (*f. pl.*).
Crete, **Crēta, -ae** (*f*).
rampart, **vallum, -ī** (*n*).
dart, **tēlum, -ī** (*n*).
in the morning, **māne** (*adv.*).
learning, **ērudītio, -ōnis** (*f*).
ditch, **fossa, -ae** (*f*).
earthwork, **agger, -eris** (*m*).
Veii, **Veiī, -ōrum** (*m*).

reluctantly, **invītus, -a, -um** (*adj.*).
beautiful, **pulcher, -chra, -chrum.**
stand, **stō, stāre, stetī, statum.**
hurl, **coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.**
visit, **vīsō, -ere, -sī, -sum.**
transport, **transmittō -ere, mīsī, -missum.**
depart, **abeō, -īre, -īvī** or **iī, -itum.**
Tarentum, **Tarentum, -ī** (*n*).
Arretium, **Arrētium, -iī** (*n*).
Africa, **Africa, -ae** (*f*).
Lanuvium, **Lānuvium, -iī** (*n*).
country-house, **villa, -ae** (*f*)
Florence, **Flōrentia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 16.

day, **diēs, diēī** (*m*).
night, **nox, noctis** (*f*).
foot, **pēs, pedis** (*m*).
hour, **hōra, -ae** (*f*).
month, **mēnsis, -is** (*m*).
leave, **relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.**
travel, **iter faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.**
arrive, **perveniō ad.**
Cannae, **Cannae, -ārum** (*f. pl.*).
cavalry, **equitātus, -ūs** (*m*), **equitēs, equitum** (*m. pl.*).
thousand, see obs. 2, p. 20.
infantry, **pedites, -um** (*m. pl.*).
Nero, **Nero, -ōnis** (*m*).
all (i.e. the whole of) **tōtus, -a, -um** (*adj.*).
deep, high, **altus, -a, -um.**
long, **longus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 17.

broad, **lātus, -a, -um.**
ship, **nāvis, -is** (*f*).
all night long, **tōtam noctem.**
March (month), **Martius** (*adj.*).
gate, **porta, -ae** (*f*).
messenger, **nuntius, -ī** (*m*).
nearest, **proximus, -a, -um.**
like (*vb.*), **amō, 1.**
bridge, **pōns, pontis** (*m*).
Rhone, **Rhodanus, -ī** (*m*).
cruelty, **crūdēlitās, ātis** (*f*).
approach, **adeō, -īre.**
wait, **commoror, 1.**
build a bridge over a river, **pontem in flumine facere.**
see, **videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum.**
Saguntum, **Saguntum, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 18.

Corioli, **Coriolī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).
pace, **passus, -ūs** (*m*).
Corinth, **Corinthus, -ī** (*f*).
be away, be distant from, **absum, -esse, āfuī.**
mile, **mille passūs.**
miles, **mīlia passuum.**
Ariovistus, **Ariovistus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 19.

temple, **templum -ī** (*n*).
tower, **turris, -is** (*f*).
road, **iter, itineris** (*n*), **via, -ae** (*f*).
boat, **linter, -tris** (*f*).
life, **vīta, -ae** (*f*).
complete, **conficiō, -ere, -fēcī -fectum.**
dislodge, **deiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** (*intrans.*).

row, **rēmigō, 1** (*intrans.*). **navem rēmis impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum** (*trans.*).
Aesculapius, **Aesculāpius, -ī** (*m*).
Epidaurus, **Epidaurus, -ī** (*f*).
Hasdrubal, **Hasdrubal, -alis** (*m*).
Gergovia, **Gergovia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 20.

people, **gēns, gentis** (*f*).
August, **Sextilis, -e.**
eager, **cupidus, -a, -um.**
game, **lūdus, -ī** (*m*).
maiden, **puella, -ae** (*f*).
be unwilling, **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.**
celebrate, **celebrō, 1.**
rush upon, **irruō, -ere, -ruī.**
carry off, **auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum.**
woman, **mulier, -eris** (*f*).
invite, **invītō, 1.**
inhabitants, **incolae, -ārum** (*c*).
Caenina, **Caenīna, -ae** (*f*).
Crustumerium, **Crustumerium, -iī** (*n*).
Antemnae, **Antemnae, -ārum.** (*f*).
soon, **mox** (*adv.*).
such . . . as, **tālis, -e . . . quālis, -e.**
in a short time, **brevī tempore.**
signal, **sīgnum, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 21.

parent, **parēns, parentis** (*c*).
rouse, **sollicitō, 1.**
Sabines, **Sabīnī, -ōrum** (*m*).
reputation, **laus, laudis** (*f*).
inactive, **sēgnis, -e.**
territory, **agrī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).
easily, **facile.**
moreover, **praetereā.**
assault (at the first), **prīmō impetū (impetus, -ūs).**
vow, dedicate, **voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum.**
consecrate, **consecrō, 1.**
Capitol, **Capitōlium -ī** (*n*).
Iuppiter, **Iūppiter, Iovis** (*m*).

EXERCISE 22.

The following verbs govern the dative case
favour, **faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.**
envy, **invideō, 2.**
spare, **parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum.**
persuade, **persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.**
serve, **serviō, 4.**
trust, **crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
injure, **noceō, -ēre, -uī -itum** (but **laedō, -ere, -sī, -sum,** + *acc.*)
please, **placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.**
forgive, **ignoscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum.**
obey, **pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.** (supine rare; use **obtemperō** in *impers. pf. pass.*).
to give orders, **imperō, 1** (also *acc.* of thing ordered or exacted).
willingly, **libenter.**
captive, **captivus, -ī** (*m*).
law, **lēx, lēgis** (*f*).

EXERCISE 23.

tent (general's), headquarters, **praetōrium, -iī** (*n*).
suddenly, **subitō.**
rush together, **concurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursum.**
magistrate, **magistrātus, -ūs** (*m*).
part, **pars, partis** (*f*).
from all parts, **ex omnibus partibus, undique** (*adv.*).
Asculum, **Asculum, -ī** (*n*).
shout, cry, **clāmō, 1; conclāmō, 1.**
return, **reditus, -ūs** (*m*).

EXERCISE 24.

severe, **gravis, -e** (*adj.*).
citadel, **arx, arcis** (*f*).
way, **via, -ae** (*f*).
disaster, **clādes, -is** (*f*).
be in command of, **praesum** (*dat.*).
bribe, **corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.**
gold, **aurum, -ī** (*n*).
wage war (see Ex. 16a, phrase.)

EXERCISE 25.

plain, **campus, -ī** (*m*), **plānities, -ēī** (*f*).
panic, to be in a state of, **trepidō, 1.**
in confusion, **perturbātus, -a, -um** (*adj.*); **nullō ordinē.**
from all sides, **undique.**
matron, **mātrōna, -ae** (*f*).
surely, **nīmīrum; sine dubiō.**
husband, **maritus, -ī** (*m*).
rally, **se colligere.**
trust, **confīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum** (+ *dat.*).
retreat, **pedem referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum.**
renew battle, **proelium redintegrāre, 1.**
prefer, **mālō, mālle, māluī.**
desist, cease, **desistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.**
fiercely, **ācriter.**
Palatine hill, **Palātium, -iī,** (*n*).
Capitoline hill, **Capitōlium, -iī** (*n*).
perceive, **sentiō, -īre, sensī, sensum.**
too much, **nimis.**
die, **morior, morī, mortuus sum.**
make peace, **pācem compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.**
between, **inter** (+ *acc.*).

EXERCISE 26.
(Verbs requiring Prolative Infinitive.)

be able, **possum, posse, potuī.**
determine, **constituō, -ere, constituī, constitūtum; statuō, -ere, statuī, statūtum.**
wish, **volō, velle, voluī.**
ought, **dēbeō, 2.**
compel, **cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coactum.**
try, **cōnor, 1.**
dare, **audeō, ēre, ausus sum.**
allow, **sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm.**

be unwilling, not to wish, **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.**
move, **moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum.**

---

believe, **crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
bank, **rīpa, -ae** (*f*).
pity, **misericordia, -ae** (*f*).
help, **iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum.**
fortify, **muniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum.**

EXERCISE 27.
(Verbs requiring Prolative Infinitive.)

teach, **doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum.**
desire, **cupiō, -ere, -īvī, ītum.**
prefer, **mālō, mālle, māluī.**
be accustomed, **soleō, solēre, solitus sum.**
begin, **incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**
cease, **desinō, -ere, -siī.**
learn, **discō, discere, didicī.**
seem, **videor, 2.**

---

be punished, **poenas (dare).**
surrender, **mē dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
defend, **dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sum.**
read, **legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum.**
write, **scrībō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.**
set fire to, **incendō, -ere, -dī, -sum** (*trans.*).

EXERCISE 28.

inactivity, **nihil agere (agō, agere, ēgī, actum).**
praiseworthy, **laudandus, -a, -um.**
lie, **mentior, 4.**
happiness, **beātē vīvere, 3.**
prosperity, **rēs secundae** or **prosperae.**
dangerous, **perīculōsus, -a, -um.**
praise oneself, **se laudāre.**
recommendation, **commendātiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
self-satisfaction, **sibi placēre.**
energetic, **impiger, -gra, -grum.**

EXERCISE 29.

reckless, **incautus, -a, -um.**
venture, **audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.**

EXERCISE 30.

patient, **patiēns, patientis.**
orator, **ōrātor, -ōris** (*m*).
pleasing (*adj.*), **grātus, -a, -um.**
speak, **loquor, -ī, locūtus sum.**
less, **minus** (*adv.*).

EXERCISE 31.

old man, **senex, senis** (*m*).
occur, **accidō, -ere, -cidī.**
miracle, **mirāculum -ī** (*n*).
show, **spectāculum, -ī** (*n*).
take one's seat, **sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.**
throne, **solium, -iī** (*n*).
cloud, **nūbes, -is** (*f*).
of course, **sānē.**
seat, **sella, -ae** (*f*).
empty, **vacuus, -a, -um.**
near, **prope** (*adv.*).
heaven, **caelum, -ī** (*n*).

storm, **tempestās, -ātis** (*f*).
review, **recēnseō, -ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum.**
carry up, **tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum.**
again, **rursus.**
reign, **rēgnō, 1.**
see, **spectō, 1.**
on all sides (i.e., everywhere), **ubīque.**
black, **niger, -ra, -rum.**
grow clear, **illūcescō, -ere, illuxī,** *impers.* = the sky grows clear.
stand near, **adstō, -āre, -stitī.**

EXERCISE 32.

Saturninus, **Saturnīnus, -ī** (*m*).
announce, **nuntiō, 1.**
turn away (*intrans.*), **mē āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.**
come to the help of, **subveniō** (+ *dat.*).
Helvetii, **Helvētiī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).

EXERCISE 33.

watch, **vigilia, -ae** (*f*).
sacred, **sacer, sacra, sacrum.**
entrust, **committō, -ere, mīsī, -missum,** *or* **mandō 1.** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
Crassus, **Crassus, ī** (*m*).
cross, **transeō, -īre, -īvī, -itum.**
scout, **explōrātor, -ōris** (*m*).
think, **reor, rērī, ratus sum.**
place, **locus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 34.

name, **nōmen, -inis** (*n*).
win (e.g. glory), **pariō, -ere, peperī, partum.**
never, **numquam** *or* **nunquam.**
appear, **appareō, 2.**
order, **iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum.**
capital, **caput, -itis,** (*n*).
glory, **glōria, -ae** (*f*).
sap, **consūmō, -ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum.**
period, **aevum, -ī** (*n*).
strength, **vīres, -ium** (*f. pl.*).
vice, **vitium, -iī** (*n*).
carry out, **perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
again, **posteā** (*adv.*).

EXERCISE 35.

at last, **tandem** (*adv.*).
staff officer, lieutenant, **lēgātus -ī** (*m*).
men say, **ferunt.**
promise, **polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.**
hope, **spērō, 1.**
end, **fīnis, -is** (*m* and *f*).
threaten, **minor, 1.**
retreat, **pedem referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum; mē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**

EXERCISE 36.

winter, **hiems, -emis** (*f*).
trivial, **levis, -e.**
again, **rursus, iterum.**
worst, to, **vincō, 3.**

EXERCISE 37.

desire, **cupīdō, -inis** (*f*).
hope, **spes, -eī** (*f*).
pay attention to, **studeō, -ēre, -uī** (+ *dat.*).

pursue, **consequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.**
consult the interests of, **consulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum** (*dat.*).
destroy (things), **dīruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum.**
battle, **proelium, -iī** (*n*).
join battle, **proelium committere.**
pray, **ōrō, 1.**
prepare, **parō, 1.**

EXERCISE 38.

Fabius, **Fabius, -ī** (*m*).
timber, wood, **māteria, -ae** (*f*).
summon, **arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.**
loyal, **fidēlis, -e.**
powerful, **potēns, -entis.**
deceive, **dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**
centurion, **centuriō, -ōnis** (*m*).

EXERCISE 39.

after these things, **posteā** (*adv.*).
in turn, **invicem.**
reputation, **fāma, -ae** (*f*).
power, **imperium, -ī** (*n*).
hold, **obtineō, 2.**
justice, **iustitia, -ae** (*f*)
wisdom, **sapientia, -ae** (*f*).
harsh, **sevērus, -a, -um.**
tax, **tribūtum -ī** (*n*).
last, **ultimus, -a, -um.**
proud, **superbus, -a, -um.**
oppress, **opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.**
impose, **impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.**
Tarquin, **Tarquinius, -ī** (*m*).
exact, **exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum.**
expel, **expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.**

EXERCISE 40.

Catiline, **Catilīna, -ae** (*m*).
prudence, **prūdentia, -ae** (*f*).
alive, **vīvus, -a, -um.**
as advocate (= to defend), **dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sum.**
prosper, **flōreō, -ēre, -uī.**
support, **suffrāgor, 1** (+ *dat.*).
hold a levy, **dēlectum habeō, 2.**
sustain (a defeat), **accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**
Murena, **Murena, -ae** (*m*).
Pompey, **Pompēius, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 41.

dictator, **dictātor, -ōris** (*m*).
fortune, **fortūna, -ae** (*f*); **opēs, opum** (*f. pl.*).
judge, **iūdex, -icis** (*m*).
support (the cause of), **faveō, -ēre, -fāvī, fautum** (*dat.*).
surrender, **mē trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
besiege, **obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum.**
deprive, **spoliō, 1** (*acc.* of person, *abl.* of thing taken).
acquit, **absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum.**
safe, **incolumis, -e.**
Remi, **Rēmi, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).
Iugurtha, **Iugurtha, -ae** (*m*).

EXERCISE 42.

province, **prōvincia, -ae** (*f*).
arrow, **sagitta, -ae** (*f*).

winter quarters, **hīberna, -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
pardon, **venia, -ae** (*f*).
slowly, **lentē.**
ask questions, **interrogō, 1.**
approach, **appropinquō, 1.** (*dat.* or *ad* + *acc.*).
exhort, **hortor, 1.**
reply, **rēspondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sum.**
strike (by a missile), **iciō, -ere, icī, ictum.**
sleep, **dormiō, 4.**

EXERCISE 43.

speedily, **celeriter.**
mortal (causing death), **mortifer, -fera, -ferum.**
shout, **clāmor, -ōris** (*m*).
pass by, **praetereō, -īre, -īvī** or **iī, -itum.**
receive (wound), **accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**

EXERCISE 44.

crowd, **multitūdō, -inis** (*f*).
saviour, **servātor, -ōris** (*m*).
alarm, **conturbō, 1.**
break through, **perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.**
triumph, **triumphō, 1.**
wood (i.e. forest), **silva, -ae** (*f*).
mourn, **maereō, -ēre, -uī.**
country (native land), **patria, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 45.

evening, **vesper, -erī** (*m*).
midnight, **media nox.**
daybreak, **prīmā lūce.**
unobserved, **clam** (*adv.*).

fortifications, **mūnīmenta, -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
obtain, **adipīscor, -ī, adeptus sum.**
fall, **collābor, -ī, -lapsus sum.**
Antium, **Antium, -iī** (*n*).
silver, **argentum, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 46.

suitable, **idōneus, -a, -um.**
address, **alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum.**
enter, **ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum.**
slip, **lābor, lābī, lapsus sum.**
halt, **consistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.**
fall down, **dēcidō, -ere, -cidī** (*de* or *ex* + *abl.*).
fall (= slip), **collābor, -ī, -lapsus sum.**
horse, **equus, -ī** (*m*).
Octavianus, **Octāviānus, -ī** (*m*).
Germans, **Germānī, -ōrum.** (*m*).
angry, **īrātus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 47.

weak, **infirmus, -a, -um.**
spy, **speculātor, -ōris** (*m*).

EXERCISE 48.

Piso, **Pīsō, -ōnis** (*m*).
sword, **gladius, -iī** (*m*).
disaster, **calamitās, -ātis** (*f*).
condemn to death, **capitis damnō, 1.**
draw up, **instruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum.**
arrest, **comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hensum.**

seize, **rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum.**
bring to an end, **perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
dig, **fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossum.**

EXERCISE 49.

sentry, **custos, -ōdis** (*m*).
complain, **queror, querī, questus sum.**
send away, **āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.**

EXERCISE 50.

elephant, **elephantus, -ī** (*m*).
swamp, **palus, -ūdis** (*f*).
midday, **merīdiēs, -ēī** (*m*).
dead, **mortuus, -a, -um.**
village, **vīcus, -ī** (*m*).
overturn, **ēvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.**
throw into confusion, **perturbō, 1.**
draw (a sword), **dēstringō, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum.**
refuse admittance, **exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.**
bury, **sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum.**
drag, **trahō, -ere, -trāxī, trāctum.**
mount, **ascendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsum** (*in*).
charge, **impetum faciō.**

EXERCISE 51.

wound, **vulnus, -eris** (*n*).
creep, **serpō, -ere, serpsī, serptum.**
Dumnorix, **Dumnorix, -igis** (*m*).
left, **laevus, -a, -um.**

wing, **cornu, -ūs** (*n*).
senate house, **cūria, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 52.

thing, matter, **rēs, reī** (*f*).
both . . . and, **et . . . et.**
violate, **repudiō, 1.**
booty, **praeda, -ae** (*f*).
foreign, **externus, -a, -um.**
custom, **mos, mōris** (*m*).
increase, **augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum.**
set aside, **sēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.**
cruel, **crūdēlis, -e.**

EXERCISE 53.

not even, **ne . . . quidem** (the word to be stressed should be placed between **ne** and **quidem**).
remove, **āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.**
descendants, **nātī** (*m. pl.*) + *ex.*
above, **suprā** (*adv.*).
censor, **censor, -ōris** (*m*).
crime, **scelus, -eris** (*n*).
possess influence, **valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.**
first, **prīmus, -a, -um.**
until, **dōnec.**
show, **dēmonstrō, 1.**
Etruscans, **Etruscī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).

EXERCISE 54.

idle, **ignāvus, -a, -um.**
population, **cīves, -ium** (*m*).
humble, **parvus, -a, -um** (*adj.*).
finally, **dēnique.**
country, **regiō, -ōnis** (*f*).

bordering on, **attingens** (participle of **attingere**).
Mediterranean, **Mare māgnum.**
resolution (moral), **constantia, -ae** (*f*).
adversity, **rēs adversae.**
soft, **mollis, -e.**
accomplish, **conficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
Egypt, **Aegyptus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 55.

corn, **frūmentum, -ī** (*n*).
so often, **totiēs.**
spend a holiday, **vacō, 1.**
buy, **emō, -ere, ēmī, emptum.**
Bithynia, **Bīthȳnia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 56.

withdraw, **mē recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**
stab, **confodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum.**
learned, **ēruditus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 57.

Plato, **Platō, -ōnis** (*m*).
dreadful, **terribilis, -e.**
day and night, **diem noctemque.**
unfortunate, **infēlix -īcis.**
client, **cliēns, -entis** (*m*).
fortified, **mūnītus, -a, -um.**
derision, **irrīsiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
gallant, **fortis, -e.**
civilised, **hūmānus, -a, -um.**
Spanish, **Hispānus, -a, -um.**
be present, **adsum, adesse, adfuī.**
prosecute, **accūsō, 1.**
excite (e.g. derision), **moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.**
Bratuspantium, **Bratuspantium -iī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 58.

republic, **rēspublica** (*decline separately*).
sea-coast, **ōra, -ae** (*f*).
colony, **colōnia, -ae** (*f*).
reason, **causa, -ae** (*f*).
field, **ager, agrī** (*m*).
prosperous, **prosperus, -era, -erum.**
luxurious, **luxuriōsus, -a, -um.**
much later, **multō post.**
rule, **imperium, -iī** (*n*).
to form, **fingō, -ere, finxī, fictum.**
to extend, **extendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.**
at the time when, **eō tempore . . . quō.**
along, **per** (+ *acc.*).
home, **sēdes, -is,** (*f*).
plough, **arō, 1.**
trade, **negōtior, 1.**
Naples, **Neāpolis, -is** (*f*).
come to grips with, **congredior, -ī, -gressus sum** (*cum*).
rich, **dīves, -itis.**

EXERCISE 59.

interior, **pars interior.**
tribe, **nātiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
almost, **fermē.**
race, **genus, -eris** (*n*).
language, **lingua, -ae** (*f*).
stream, **flūmen, -inis** (*n*).
pass, **saltus, -ūs** (*m*).
raid, **incursiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
frequently, **saepe.**

fertility, **fertilitās, -ātis** (*f*).
soil, **solum, -ī** (*n*).
continually, **continenter, assiduē.**
plough land, **culta, -ōrum,** (*n*).
inhabit, **teneō, -ēre, tenuī.**
differ, **differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātum.**
cultivate, **colō, -ere, coluī, cultum.**
increase, **crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum** (*intrans.*), **augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum.** (*trans.*).
decrease, **dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum** (*trans.*).
lead on, **addūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum.**
surround, **circumdō, -are, -dedī, -datum** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
little, **parvus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 60.

difficult circumstances, **difficultātes māgnae.**
become the ally, **societāte adiungī.**
bridge of piles, **pōns sublicius.**
narrow, **angustus, -a, -um.**
provide, **praebeō, 2.**
break down, **rēscindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum.**
take up a position, **consistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.**
approach, **adventus, -ūs,** (*m*).
Lars Porsenna, **Lars, -rtis Porsenna** (*m*).
Tiber, **Tiberis, -is** (*m*).
Horatius, **Horātius, -ī** (*m*).
approach, (i.e., an entrance), **aditus, -ūs** (*m*).
move (from), **migrō, 1.**
companion, **comes, -itis** (*c*).

EXERCISE 61.

again and again, **semel atque iterum.**
sorely wounded, **complūribus confectus vulneribus.**
swollen, **turgidus, -a, -um.**
further, **ulterior, ulterius** (*adj.*)
amid plaudits of, *use verb* **plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausum.**
be stupefied, **stupeō, -ēre, -uī.**
fall (to be killed), **cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum.**
totter, **labō, 1.**
sheathe, **in vāgīnam recondō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
plunge, **mē immergō, -ere, -mersī, -mersum.**
behold, **conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.**
overwhelm, **obruō, -ere, -uī, -utum.**
fall (e.g. of a bridge), **corruō, -ere, -uī.**
pray, **precor, 1** (+ *acc.*).
Lartius, **Lartius, -ī** (*m*).
Herminius, **Herminius, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 62.

siege, **obsidiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
pay (soldiers), **stipendium dō, dare, dedī, datum.**
real, **vērus, -a, -um.**
seriously, **graviter.**
Mucius, **Mūcius, -ī** (*m*).
scarcity, **inopia, -ae** (*f*)

provisions, **cibus, -ī** (*m*).
conspicuous, **insignis, -e.**
garment, **vestis, -is** (*f*).
secretary, **scrība, -ae** (*m*).
withdraw, **redūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum.**
abandon, **dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum** (*abl.*).
be embarrassed, **labōrō, 1.**
swim across, **trānō, 1.**
be busy, **versor, 1.**

EXERCISE 63.

danger, **perīculum, -ī** (*n*).
right hand, **dextera, -ae** (*f*).
plot, **coniūrātiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
pain, **dolor, -ōris** (*m*).
dishonour, **ignōminia, -ae** (*f*).
fortitude, **constantia, -ae** (*f*).
boast, **glōrior, 1.**
reveal, **aperiō, -īre, -peruī, -pertum.**
thrust, **porrigō, -ere, porrexī, porrectum.**
swear, **iūrō, 1.**
break camp, **castra moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.**
affect, **moveō, 2.**
fire, **ignis, -is** (*m*).
like, **similis, -e.**
admire, **mīror, 1.**
lo, look, **ecce.**

EXERCISE 64.

needy, **egēns, -entis.**
extravagant, **sumptuōsus, -a, -um.**
skilful, **perītus, -a, -um.**
win over, **conciliō, 1** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
sail, **nāvem solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum.**

EXERCISE 65.

justly, **iūre** (*adv.*)
blameworthy, **culpā dignus.**
speech, **ōrātiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
enroll, **conscrībō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum.**
influence, **moveō, 2.**
sit down, **consīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum.**
as soon as possible, **quam prīmum.**
make for, **petō, -ere, -īvī** or **iī, -ītum.**

EXERCISE 66.

seldom, **rārō** (*adv.*).
foolish, **stultus, -a, -um.**
leaf, **folium, -iī** (*n*).
exile, **exsilium, -iī** (*n*).
converse with, **colloquor** (*cum.*).
hall, **vestibulum, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 67.

Horace, **Horātius, -ī** (*m*).
muster, **recēnseō, -ēre, -censuī, -censum.**
little farm, **agellus, -ī** (*m*).
strive, **cōnor, 1.**

EXERCISE 68.

league, **civitātes foederātae.**
troublesome, **gravis, -e; molestus, -a, -um.**
bitter foe, **infestus, -a, -um** (*adj.*)
nevertheless, **tamen.**
head, **caput, -itis** (*n*).
resolute, **fortis, -e.**
reverse, **clādes, -is** (*f*).

enter alliance with, **societātem ineō, -īre, -īvī** or **-iī, -itum** (*cum.* + *abl.*).
admit, **fateor.**
people of Veii, **Vēientes, -ium** (*c*).
Latin, **Latīnus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 69.

line of battle, **aciēs, -ēī** (*f*).
Litterly, **acerbē** (*adv.*).
wrongfully, **iniūriā** (*adv.*).
poor, **pauper, -eris.**
terms, **condiciōnēs, -um** (*f*).
creditor, **crēditor, -ōris** (*m*).
protect the interests (of), **cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum** (*dat.*).
borrow, **mūtuor, 1** (*acc.*).
in time of peace, **in pāce.**
oppress, **vexō, 1.**

EXERCISE 70.

position, **rēs, -eī** (*f*).
colleague, **collēga, -ae** (*f*).
cut off, **interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum.**
overtake, **consequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum.**
consolidate, **confirmō, 1.**
old soldier, **veterānus, -ī** (*m*).
corn, **frūmentum, -ī** (*n*).
Gracchus, **Gracchus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 71.

rock, **saxum, -ī** (*n*).
Domitius, **Domitius, -ī** (*m*).
Epirus, **Epīrus, -ī** (*m*).
fleet, **classis, -is** (*f*).

L

EXERCISE 72.

escape, **effugiō, -ere, -fūgī.**
house, **condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
neglect, **neglegō, -ere, -lexī. -lectum.**
protect, **tueor, -ērī, tuitus** or **tūtus sum.**
warn, **admoneō, 2.**

EXERCISE 73.

fog, **nebula, -ae** (*f*).
shield, **scūtum, -ī** (*n*).
weep, **lacrimō, 1.**
piteously, **miserābiliter.**

EXERCISE 74.

fail, **dēficiō, 3.**
uprightness, **probitās, -ātis** (*f*).
discipline, **exerceō, 2.**

EXERCISE 75.

issue, **ēventus, -ūs** (*m*).
calmly, **placidē.**
despise, **contemnō, -ere, -tem(p)sī, -temptum.**

EXERCISE 76.

peak, **cacūmen, -inis** (*n*).

EXERCISE 77.

hunger, **famēs, -is** (*f*).
upright, **probus, -a, -um.**
comfort, **consōlor, 1.**
send to the help of, **submittō, 3** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
remove, **āmoveō, 2.**
discouraged, **dēmissus, -a, -um.**

to be discouraged, **animo dēmisso esse.**
end, **extrēmus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 78.

rank, **ordō, -inis** (*m*).
Sacred Mount, **Mōns Sacer** (*m*).
cliff, **saxum, -ī** (*n*)
host, **multitūdō, -inis** (*f*).
picket, **statiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
make a stand, **consistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.**
disobey, **non pāreō, 2** (*dat.*).

EXERCISE 79.

unbending, **sevērus, -a, -um.**
famine, **fames, -is** (*f*).
resent, **in malam partem accipiō.**
exile, **in exsilium pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum.**
famous, **praeclārus, -a, -um.**
defeat (in an election), **repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.**
Tarpeian, **Tarpēius, -a, -um.**
deeds, **rēs gestae.**

EXERCISE 80.

refuse, **respuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum; reiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.**
in the presence of, **cōram** (*abl.*).
go straight, **contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.**
lady, **fēmina nōbilis.**
priest, **sacerdos, -ōtis** (*m*).
courteously, **cōmiter.**
injury, **iniūria, -ae** (*f*).

stir up, **sollicitō, 1; commoveō, 2.**
succeed, **perficere** (+ *acc.*).
firmly, **obstinātē** (*adv.*).
kiss, **osculor, 1.**
at once, **extemplō** (*adv.*).
disaffected, **sēditiōsus, -a, -um.**
impose, **exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actum.**
harsh, **acerbus, -a, -um.**
mild, **mītis, -e.**
inflict, **inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illatum.**

EXERCISE 81.

deputation, **lēgāti** (*m. pl.*).
work, **labor, -ōris** (*m*).
appoint, **creō, 1.**
name, **dīcō, dicere, dixī, dictum.**
don, **induō, -ere -duī, -dūtum.**
repel, **prōpulsō, 1.**
at the same time, **simul**

EXERCISE 82.

benefit (*vb.*), **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī** (*dat.*).

EXERCISE 83.

Alps, **Alpēs, -ium** (*f*).
Ides, **Idūs, -uum** (*f*).
elude, **effugiō, -ere, -fūgī.**
go by sea, **navigō, 1.**
reinforcements, **novae cōpiae; supplementum** (only in *sing.*).
Ariminum, **Arīminum, -ī** (*m*).
Massilia, **Massilia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 84.

a young girl, **puella, -ae** (*f*).
serve, **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī** (*dat.*).
appoint to the command of, **praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** (*acc. of person; dat. of thing*).
supply, **suggerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum; suppeditō, 1.** (*trans., intrans.* and *absol.*).
Labienus, **Labiēnus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 85.

suggest, **admoneō, 2.**
implore, **obsecrō, 1.**
Belgae, **Belgae, -ārum** (*m. pl*).
Verres, **Verres, -is** (*m*).
Tullia, **Tullia, -ae** (*f*).
acquit, **absolvō, -ere, -vī, -ūtum.**
march (*trans.*), **dūcō, -ere, duxī, ductum.**
letter, **epistula, -ae** (*f*).
tear, **lacrima, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 86.

to the effect that, **ut.**
lay aside, **dēpōnō, -ere,-posuī, -positum.**
fear, **timor, -ōris** (*m*).
knight, **eques, -itis** (*m*).
Britons, **Britannī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).

EXERCISE 87.

see to it, **cūrō, 1.**
trust, **confīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum** (*dat. of person, abl. of thing*).
pass, **superō, 1.**

EXERCISE 88.

likely, *use periphrastic future.*
supplies, **cibus, -ī** (*m*); **commeātus, ūs** (*m*).
by design, **dē industriā, consultō**
unquestionably, **sine dubiō.**
oppose, **mē obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** (+*dat.*).
difficult, **difficilis, -e.**

EXERCISE 89.

expect, **spērō, 1.**
address soldiers, **apud mīlitēs contiōnor, 1.**
encamp, **consīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum; castra pōnō.**
enquire, **quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī,** or **-siī, -sītum.**

EXERCISE 90.

anxious to (e.g. I am anxious to know), **cupiō, -ere, -īvī** or **-iī, -ītum.**
prefer, **antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum** (*acc.* and *dat.*) e.g. **mortem dēdecori antepōnit.**
Rubicon, **Rubicō, -ōnis** (*m*).
uncertain, **incertus, -a, -um; dubius, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 91.

break (laws), **violō, 1.**
first . . . and then, **prīmum . . . . deinde.**

EXERCISE 92

cohort, **cohors, cohortis** (*f*).
silent (to be), **taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.**
fellow, **homo, -inis** (*m*).
refuse, **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.**
rumour, **fāma, -ae** (*f*).
waste (time), **terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum.**

EXERCISE 93.

victorious (to be), **victōriam reportō, 1.**
resist, **impetum sustineō, -ēre, uī,** (and rare) **-tentum.**
overhang, **immineō, -ēre,** (no perf. or supine).

EXERCISE 94.

instruct, **praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum** (*acc. of thing, dat. of person*). (use impersonally in passive).
summon, **arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.**
rampart, **vallum, ī** (*n*).
sell, **vendō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.**
respect, **honōrō, 1.**
destroy, **dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.**
offer, **offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.**

EXERCISE 95.

recount, **expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum.**
realise, **sentiō, -īre, -sī, -sum.**
chief (*adj.*), **princeps, -ipis** (*m*).
sea-faring, **maritimus, -a, -um.**
trading-post, **emporium, -ī** (*n*).
convenient, **commodus, -a, -um.**
harbour, **portus, -ūs** (*m*).
rival, **aemulus, -ī** (*m*).
on their side, *use* **ipsi.**
establish, **collocō, 1.**
commerce, **merx, mercis** (*f*).
pretext, **causa, -ae** (*f*).
firmly, **valdē.**
hinder, **impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.**

EXERCISE 96.

set about, **coepī, -issc.**
row, **rēmigō, 1.**
on dry land, **in siccō.**
crew, **nautae, -ārum** (*m. pl.*).
terrified, **perturbātus, -a, -um.**
train, **exerceō, 2.**
put on board, **in nāvem impōnō.**
company, **manipulus, -ī** (*m*).
land (adj.), **terrestris, -e.**
furnish, **instruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum.**
grappling iron, **ferrea manus, ūs; cōpula, -ae** (*f*).
board, **in nāvem transcendō.**
fight hand to hand, **manūs conserō, -ere, -uī, -tum.**
fall, *use* **dēmittor, -ī, -missus sum.**
fasten, **alligō, 1.**
together, **inter sē.**
heavy, **gravis, -e.**

EXERCISE 97.

powerful, **potēns, -tis.**
finally (wholly), **omnīno.**

short, **brevis, -e.**
by name, **nōmine.**
art of war, **ars mīlitāris.**
hire, **condūcō, -ere, -duxī, ductum.**
to pay (soldiers), **stīpendium persolvō, -ere, -ī, -solūtum.**
collect, **cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.**
descend upon, **incidō, -ere, -ī, incāsum.**
cause panic to, **pavōrem iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** (*dat.*).
provide money, **pecūniam conferō.**
mercenaries, **mīlitēs conductī.**

EXERCISE 98.

Cortona, **Cortōna, -ae** (*f*)
in the vicinity of, **ad** (*acc.*).
lake, **lacus, -ūs** (*m*).
headstrong, **ferox, -ōcis.**
entrap (to lie in wait for), **insidior, 1** (*dat.*).
first, **prīmō.**
lay waste, **vastō, 1.**
country, **agrī** (see p. 327).
stir up, **irritō, 1.**
avenge, **vindicō, 1.**
ambush, **insidiae, -ārum** (*f*)
am between, lie between, **intersum, -esse, -fuī** (*dat.*).
hold, **contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.**
Trasimene, **Trasumēnus, -ī** (*m*).
Africans, **Afrī, -ōrum** (*m*).
Flaminius, **Flāminius, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 99.

light armed troops, **levis armātūra.**
behind, **post** (*acc.*).
post, **collocō, 1.**
cause, **efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
mound, **tumulus, -ī** (*m*).
lie near, **adiaceō, -ēre, -uī** (*dat.* or *ad* + *acc.*).
push on, **prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.**
briskly, **ācriter.**
find out (milit.), **explōrō, 1.**
baggage, **impedimenta, -ōrum** (*n*).
defile, **saltus, -ūs** (*m*).
encumber, **impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.**
front, **frōns, frontis** (*f*).
flank, **latus, -eris** (*n*).
rear, **tergum, -ī** (*n*).
at the one moment, **ūnō tempore** (*place at beginning of clause*).
impetuous, **ferox, -ōcis.**

EXERCISE 100.

fight a pitched battle, **in aciē dīmicō, 1.**
shameful, **foedus, -a, -um.**
foolishness, **inscītia, -ae** (*f*).
in the field, **cum exercitū, ad exercitum adisse.**
the latter, **hīc, haec, hōc.**
continually, **semper.**
urge, **instō, -āre, -stitī, -statum** (*dat.*).
cunning (*adj.*), **callidus, -a, -um.**
resourceful, **parātus ad omnia.**
fully, **satis.**
make a rash move, **rem gerere audācius.**

once . . . on the second occasion, **prīmum . . . deinde.**
lay a trap, **insidias parō, 1.**

EXERCISE 101.

centre, **media aciēs, -ēī** (*f*).
outwit, **dolō capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.**
close in, **irruō, -ere, -ruī.**
shut off, **interclūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum.**
supports, **subsidia, -ōrum** (*n*).
in their extremity, **in rēbus tam adversīs.**
exhausted, **confectus, -a, -um.**
unwearied, **integer, -gra, -grum.**
without serious losses, **ferē sine vulnere.**
cut to pieces, **trucīdō, 1.**
encourage = induce, **addūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum.**
strong, **firmus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 102.

Hasdrubal, **Hasdrubal, -alis** (*m*).
strategy, **cōnsilium, -ī** (*n*).
deliberate, **dēliberō, 1.**
by good luck, **casū.**
Claudius, **Claudius, -ī** (*m*)

EXERCISE 103.

reinforce, **suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.**
of Apulia (*adj.*), **Apūlicus, -a, -um.**
manage to, **perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (ut).**
withdraw, **subdūcō, -ere, -duxī, -ductum.**
in crowds, **frequēns, -tis.**
countryside, **agrī, -ōrum** (see p. 325).
successful, **fēlix, -īcis.**
heap up, **congerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum.**
heroic band, **virī fortēs ac strēnuī**
complete (a journey), **conficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
watch (someone) pass, **iter servō, 1.**
weaken, **dēminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.**

EXERCISE 104.

by the presence of, *use adj.* **praesēns, -tis.**
dash (milit.), **impetus, -ūs** (*m*).
withstand an attack **impetum sustineō, 2.**
put to rout, **fugō, 1.**
task, **opus, -eris** (*n*).
checkmate, **reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.**
countryman, **agrestis, -is** (*m*).
throw over, **trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.**

EXERCISE 105.

obstinacy, **pertinācia, -ae** (*f*).
join, **mē adiungō, -ere, -iunxī, -iunctum** (*ad. or dat.*).
ignorance, **ignōrantia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 106.

avarice, **avāritia, -ae** (*f*).
question, **rēs, reī** (*f*).

EXERCISE 107.

Hermae, **Hermae, -ārum** (statues of Hermes).
throw down, **dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum.**
defender, **dēfēnsor, -ōris** (*m*).
Divitiacus, **Divitiacus, -ī** (*m*)

EXERCISE 108.

restrain, **reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.**
rob, **ēripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum** (*acc. of thing, dat. of person*).
fall by lot (to someone), **sorte obveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum** (*dat.*).
gain possession of, **potior, -īrī, -ītus sum** (*abl.*).
by reason of, **ob** (*acc.*).

EXERCISE 109.

authority, **auctor, -ōris** (*m*).
utmost, **summus, -a, -um.**
improve, **amplificō, 1.**
position, **fortūna, -ae** (*f*).
important (office), **summus, -a, -um.**
office, **honor, -ōris,** (*m*), or **magistrātus, -ūs** (*m*).
order, **ordō, -inis** (*m*).
nobility, **nōbilitās, -ātis** (*f*).
disregard, **contemnō, -ere, tempsī, -temptum.**
devote (myself) to, **studeō, ēre, -uī.** (*dat.*).
acquire, **adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum.**
lot, **condiciō, -ōnis** (*f*).
especially since, **praesertim cum.**
perform, **fungor, -ī, functus sum** (*abl.*).
function, **mūnus, -eris** (*n*).
belong, **in potestāte** (*gen.*).
council of the people, **concilium plēbis.**
wealth **dīvitiae, -ārum** (*f*); **rēs familiāres** (*f. pl.*).

EXERCISE 110.

govern, **administrō, 1.**
admit, **confiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum.**
might and main, **summā vī, summis opibus.**
boundaries, **fīnes, -ium** (*m. pl.*).
extend, **propāgō, 1.**
importance, **dignitās, -ātis** (*f*).
send abroad, **domō mittō.**
extortion, **rēs repetundae.**
age, **tempora, -um** (*n. pl.*).
differ, **distō, -āre** (no pf. or sup.) **ex.**
ancestors, **māiōres, -um** (*m*).
simple, **simplex, -icis.**
accuse, **accūsō, 1.**

EXERCISE 111.

class, **genus, -eris** (*n*).
life of Rome, **rēs Rōmānae.**
serve as cavalry, **equo mereō -ēre, -uī, -itum.**
busy (oneself), **versor, 1** (*in* + *abl.*).
business man, **negōtiātor, -ōris** (*m*).
to use (spend), **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** (*abl.*).

secure advantage, **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī** (*dat.*).
huge sum (money), **multa pecūnia** (*f*).
right, **iūs, iūris** (*n*).

EXERCISE 112.

rustic, **agrestis, -e.**
own, **possideō, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum.**
sow seed, **sēmen, -inis** (*n*) **manu spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum.**
tend, **cūrō, 1.**
olive tree, **olea, -ae** (*f*).
pig, **sūs, suis** (*c*).
ox, **bōs, bovis** (*m*).
necessaries of life, **necessāria ad ūsum.**
hardy, **firmus, -a, -um.**
vigorous, **strēnuus, a, -um.**
fit to, **aptus, -a, -um ad.**
carry war, **bellum inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum.**
vine, **vītes, -is** (*f*).
farmer, **agricola, -ae** (*m*).

EXERCISE 113.

drudgery, **miseria, -ae** (*f*).
bread, **pānis, -is** (*m*).
herdsman or shepherd, **pastor, -ōris** (*m*).
cattle, **pecus, -oris** (*n*).
population, **hominum multitūdō, -inis** (*f*).
come about, **ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.**
guess, **coniectūrā consequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum.**
daily (*adj.*), **cotīdiānus.**
add, **adiungō, -ere, -iunxī, -iunctum.**
estate, **fundus, -ī** (*m*).
lease, **condūcō, 3.**
state lands, **ager pūblicus.**
estates, **possessiōnes** (*f. pl.*).

EXERCISE 114.

destroy (= wear away), **atterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītum.**
far sighted, **prōvidēns, -tis.**
Scipio Aemilianus, **Scipio (-ōnis) Aemiliānus (-ī).**
manner of life, **mōres, -um** (*m. pl.*).
resume, **recipiō, -ere, -cēpī. -ceptum** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
apportion, **attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.**
bring forward a bill, **rogātiōnem ferō** (*ad.*).
riot, **tumultus, -ūs** (*m*).
vehement, **vehemēns, -entis.**

EXERCISE 115.

high minded, **magnanimus, -a, -um.**
prosecute, **persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum.**
inflict punishment, **suppliciō afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
murder, **caedes, -is** (*f*).
win support of, **conciliō, 1** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
distribute, **distribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum** (*acc. of thing*; *dat. of person*).
from time to time (i.e. sometimes), **interdum.**
nominal price, **vīlī.**
court, **iūdicium, -i** (*n*).

private feud, **inimīcitia, -ae** (*f*).
pass (a bill), **perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum.**
attract, **addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum.**

EXERCISE 116.

honest, i.e. honorable, **honestus, -a, -um.**
enjoy, **fruor, -ī, fruitus sum** (*abl.*).
at the one time, **ūnō tempore.**

EXERCISE 117.

harangue, **hortor, 1.**
faithless, **perfidus, -a, -um.**
previous, **superior, -ōris.**
armour, **arma, -ōrum** (*n*).
long (time), **diūtinus, -a -um.**
arduous, **labōriōsus, -a, -um.**
mean, **significō, 1.**
experience, **usus, -ūs** (*m*).

EXERCISE 118.

overlong, **diūtius** (*adv.*).
make peace, **pācem confirmō, 1.**
hem in, **circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.**
yield, **cēdō, -ere, cēssī, cēssum.**

EXERCISE 119.

regain, **recuperō, 1.**
senatorial party, **senātōres.**
hastily, **praeproperē.**
influence, **auctōritās, -ātis** (*f*).
remain quiet, **quiescō, -ere, quiēvī, -ētum.**
unite, **inter sē coniungere.**
opponents, **qui sē obiciunt** (*dat.*).
fame, **laus, laudis** (*f*).
take up. **suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.**
understand, **intellegō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum.**
sufficiently, **satis** (*adv.*).
remove, **dīmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum.**

EXERCISE 120.

tenure of office, i.e. discharge an office, **mūnere** (*abl.*), **fungor, -ī, functus sum.**
resign, **dēpōnō.**
contest the consular elections, **consulātum petō.**
Numidian, **Numidicus -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 121.

success of Marius, **rēs tam prosperae Mariānae.**
snail, **coclea, -ae** (*f*).
gather, **colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lectum.**
stronghold, **castellum, -ī** (*n*)
overlook, **neglegō, -ere, -lexī, -lectum.**
actually, **rē vērā.**
threaten, **instō, -āre, -stitī.**
smash, **contundō, -ere, -tudī, -tūsum.**
invasion, **irruptiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
Ligurian, **Ligur, -uris** (*adj.* and *subst.*).
Cimbri, **Cimbrī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).
Teutones, **Teutones, -um** (*m. pl.*).

EXERCISE 122.

support, **favor, -ōris** (*m*).
assistance, **auxilium, -ī** (*n*).
weight, **gravitās, -ātis** (*f*).
hindrance, **impedimentum, -ī** (*n*).
protection, **praesidium, -ī** (*n*).
burden, **onus, -eris** (*n*).
instruction, **disciplīna, -ae** (*f*).
undoing, **exitium, -ī** (*n*).
laughing stock, **lūdibrium, -ī** (*n*).
perish, **pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum.**
to be an assistance to, **auxiliō, subsidiō esse.**
to be a hindrance to, **impedimentō esse.**
to be a protection to, **praesidiō esse.**
to be a burden to, **onerī esse.**
to be the destruction of, i.e. to prove (my) undoing, **exitiō esse.**
to be a laughing stock, **lūdibriō esse.**

EXERCISE 123.

client, **consultor, -ōris** (*m*).
snatch, **rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum.**
engineer, **faber, fabri** (*m*).
expense, **sumptus, -ūs** (*m*).
to be of advantage, **commodō esse** or **prōdesse** (*dat.*).
devote oneself to a profession, **ēlabōrāre in scientiā.**
to be especially damaging, **summae iniuriae esse.**
winter (*vb.*), **hiemō, 1.**
wretched, **miser, -era, -erum.**
safety, **salūs, -ūtis** (*f*).
Treveri, **Trēverī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).

EXERCISE 124.

eat, **vescor, -ī,** no pf. (*abl.*).
perform, **fungor, -ī, functus sum** (*abl.*).
duty, **mūnus, -eris** (*n*).
from this point, **inde.**
anyone, **quivis, quaevis, quidvis.**
brook (*vb.*), **tolerō, 1.**
siege, **obsidiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
gain possession of, **potior, -īrī, potītus sum** (*abl.*).
body, **corpus, -oris** (*n*).
tedium, **taedium, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 125.

abuse, **abūtor, -ī, abūsus sum** (*abl.*).
patience, **patientia, -ae** (*f*).
incredible, **incrēdibilis, -e.**
make for, **petō, -ere, -īvī** or **iī, -ītum.**
world, **omnēs gentēs.**
severity, **sevēritās, -ātis** (*f*).
dirty, **sordidus, -a, -um.**
hair, **capillus, -ī** (*m*).
beard, **barba, -ae** (*f*).
long (e.g. long hair), **prōmissus, -a, -um.**
speed, **celeritās, -ātis** (*f*).

EXERCISE 126.

cunning, **astūtia, -ae** (*f*).
wonderful, **mirābilis, -e.**
see, **conspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum.**
accomplices, **satellites, -um** (*m. pl.*).

indomitable, **invictus, -a, -um.**
outstanding, **insignis, -e.**
formidable, **formīdolōsus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 127.

enterprise, **negōtium, -iī** (*n*).
gain (profit), **quaerō, -ere, sīvī, -sītum.**
pleasure, **voluptās -ātis.** (*f*).

EXERCISE 128.

plenty of ability, **summa vis ingenii.**
win the favour of, **grātiam inīre apud.**
usual, **solitus, -a, -um.**
be sold, **veneō, -īre, -iī** (used as pass. of **vendō**).
inborn, **insitus, -a, -um.**
weaken, **dēbilitō, 1.**
lack, **dēsum, -esse, -fuī** (pers. as subject), (*dat.*).
Alexandria, **Alexandrīa, -ae** (*f*).
Mithridates, **Mithridātes, -is** (*m*).
propose a bill, **rogātiōnem ferō.**
desert, **dēserō, -ere, -uī, dēsertum.**

EXERCISE 129.

insult, **iniūria, -ae** (*f*).
such a pitch of, **eō** (to that point) + *gen.* e.g. **eō audāciae.**
win popularity, **voluntātem populi conciliō, 1.**

EXERCISE 130.

command (of a general), **imperium, -iī** (*n*).
endure, **patior, patī, passus sum.**
attain (e.g. the consulship), **perveniō ad.**
whether . . or, **seu . . seu.**
re-elect, **reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
reorganize, **rēstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.**
dishonoured, **summō dēdecore affectus.**

EXERCISE 131.

uphold (the cause), **sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum.**
distressed, **miser, -era, -erum.**
citizenship, **cīvitās, -ātis** (*f*).
Italian, **Italicus, -a, -um.**
contented, **contentus, -a, -um** (*abl.*).
lot, **rēs** (*pl.*).
by no means, **nēquāquam.**
furnish, **suppeditō, 1.** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
Livius Drusus, **Līvius Drūsus** (*m.*)
privilege, right, **iūs, iūris** (*n*).
share, **participō, 1** (*cum.* + *abl.*).
gift, **mūnus, -eris** (*n*).
like, just as, **sīcut.**
confer citizenship, **aliquem cīvitāte donō, 1.**

EXERCISE 132.

open, **apertus, -a, -um.**

fail to, **nequeō, -īre, -īvī** or **iī, -itum.**
Umbria, **Umbria, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 133.

common good, **salūs commūnis.**
life of Rome, **rēs publica.**
selfish, **avārus habendi.**
venal, **largītiōnibus mōtus.**
political opponents, *name the opposite party* (*here* **populāres**).
gang, **manus, -ūs** (*f*).
gladiator, **gladiātor, -ōris** (*m*).
secure private gain, **omnia quaestuī habeō, 2.**

EXERCISE 134.

wonder, **mīror, -ārī, mīrātus sum.**
rioting, **tumultus, -ūs** (*m*).
capital, **urbs, urbis** (*f*).
civil war, **bellum cīvīle** or **domesticum.**
champion, **prōpugnātor, -ōris** (*m*).
confer a command, **imperium dēferō** (*dat.*).
east = (of the east), **orientālis, -e.**

EXERCISE 135.

as has been said, **ut suprā dēmonstrāvimus.**
stupid, **imprūdēns, -tis.**
depend upon, use pass. of **pōnō** (*in* + *abl.*), e.g. **salūs in fugā posita est.**
power, **auctōritās, -ātis** (*f*).
corrupt, **prōflīgātus, -a, -um.**
forget, **oblīviscor, -ī, oblītus sum.**

EXERCISE 136.

threaten, **impendeō, -ēre** (*dat.*).
rigour, **perīculum, -ī** (*n*).
break out, **orior, -īrī, ortus sum.**
quell, **comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.**

EXERCISE 137.

oriental, **orientālis, -e.**
ascendancy, **summa rērum.**
pirate, **latrō, -ōnis** (*m*).
vanish, **dissipō, 1.**
obstinate, **pertinax, -ācis.**

EXERCISE 138.

seriousness of the campaign, **bellum grave et perīculōsum.**
emphasise, **affirmō, 1.**
to the skies, **ad caelum.**
would that, **utinam** (*subj.*).
advocate a policy, **suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum.**
a supporter of a policy, **suāsor, -ōris** (*m*).
stand out, **exsistō, -ere, stitī, -stitum.**
whole world, **omnēs gentēs.**
bear witness to, **testor, 1** (*acc.*).
modesty, **verēcundia, -ae** (*f*).
honourable behaviour, **honestās, -ātis** (*f*).
consummate, **summus, -a, -um.**
skill, **scientia, -ae** (*f*).
inexhaustible, **immēnsus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 139.

mount the ladder of office, **ascendere ad summum imperium per omnēs gradūs honōris.**
family, **genus, -eris** (*n*).
related by marriage, **affīnitāte coniungī** (*cum.*).
affability, **cōmitās, -ātis** (*f*).
generosity, **līberālitās, -ātis** (*f*).
boundless generosity, **magnificentia līberālitātis.**
content, to be, **volō, velle, voluī.**
indispensable, **maximē necessārius, -a, -um** (*dat.*).
supplant, **removeō.**
alliance, **societās, -ātis** (*f*).
ratify, **ratum aliquid faciō**

EXERCISE 140.

Verbs of hindering and preventing which may be followed by **quōminus** or **quīn.**
hinder, **impediō, 4**; (*acc.*), **obstō, 1** (*dat.*).
prevent, **retineō, prohibeō, 2.** (*usu. infin.*).
object, **recūsō 1** (also with *infin.*).
frighten from (doing anything), **dēterreō, 2.**
prevent, **inhibeō, 2.**

---

overtake, **adsequor.**
respect for, **verēcundia, -ae** (*f*), (*gen.*).
games, **lūdī, -ōrum** (*m*).
butcher (*vb*), **trucīdō, 1.**
indifferent health, **imbēcillitas corporis.**

attend, **adsum, adesse, adfuī.**
age, **aetās, -ātis** (*f*).
Trebonius, **Trebōnius, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 141.

refuse, **recūsō, 1.**
infuriated, **furibundus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 142.

come within an ace of, **minimē āfuit quīn.** (*impers.*).
be wrong, **peccō, 1.**

EXERCISE 143.

appeal for (help), **petō** (*acc.*, and *ab* with *abl.* of person).
express disagreement, **dissentiō, -īre, -sī, -sum** (*ab.*).
moon, **lūna, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 144.

admit, **fateor, fatērī, fassus sum.**
hostage, **obsēs, -idis** (*c*).

EXERCISE 145.

Sequani, **Sēquanī, -ōrum** (*m*).
expediency, **ūtilitās, -ātis** (*f*).
do duty, **officiō fungor** (*abl.*).
impose on, **impōnō** (*dat.*).
burden (fig.), **labor, -ōris** (*m*).
so far (up to the present), **usque adhuc.**
Orgetorix, **Orgetorix, -igis** (*m*).

EXERCISE 146.

Afranius, **Afrānius, -ī** (*m*).
invasion, **incursiō, -ōnis** (*f*).

fight it out, **dēcertō, 1.**
incite, **sollicitō, 1.**
supreme penalty, **ultimum supplicium.**
justifiable, **probandus, -a, -um.**
abuse, speak ill of, **maledicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum** (+ *dat.*).

EXERCISE 147.

add, **afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum** (*acc. with ad.*; *or acc. and dat.*).
carry out, **perficiō.**
appointment, **praefectūra, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 148.

manual, **scripta -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
theory, **ratiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
practice, **ūsus, -ūs,** (*m*).
cope with, **pār esse** (*dat.*).
valuable, **ūtilis, -e.**
inspire, **iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum** (*dat.*).
carefully, **dīligenter** (*adv.*).

EXERCISE 149.

deploy, **instruō, -ere, -struxī, -structum.**
qualities, **vis ingeniī.**
conspicuous, **singulāris, -e.**
a surrendered man, **dēditicius, -ī** (*m*).
lay ambush, **insidiās collocō, 1.**
overlook, **impendeō, -ēre** (*dat.*).
be engaged, **versor, 1.**
dash out, **ēvolō, 1.**
in full force, **summīs cōpiīs.**
nearness, **propinquitās, -ātis** (*f*).
appearance, **species, -ēī** (*f*).

EXERCISE 150.

Aduatuci, **Aduātucī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).
discipline, **disciplīna, -ae** (*f*).
headlong, **praeceps, praecipitis** (*adj.*).
to leave exposed, **nūdō, 1.**
Viromandui, **Vīromanduī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).
break, **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum.**

EXERCISE 151.

Boduognatus, **Boduognātus, -ī** (*m*).
dense, **confertus, -a, -um.**
column, **agmen, -inis** (*n*).
Nervii, **Nerviī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).

EXERCISE 152.

rear rank, **novissimus ordō.**
withdraw, **excēdō, -ere -cessī, -cessum.**
first line, **prīma aciēs.**
rank and file, **reliquī.**
bring hope, **spem inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum** (*dat.*).
desperate position, **extrēmae rēs.**
prop, **innītor, -ī, -nixus sum** (*abl.*).

EXERCISE 153.

let loose, **ēmittō, 3.**
stifle, **comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.**
evacuate, **discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum.**
charioteer, **essedārius, -iī** (*m*).

rebuild, **reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum.**
dinner, **cēna, -ae** (*f*).
Cassivellaunus, **Cassivellaunus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 154.

rescue, **e perīculō ēripiō, -ere, ripuī, -reptum.**
pacification of Gaul, **Gallia pācāta.**
tradition of ancestors, **mōs maiōrum.**

EXERCISE 155.

begin to dawn, **illūcescō, -ere, illuxī.**
step ashore, **e nāve ēgredior.**

EXERCISE 156.

notice, **animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sum.**
in a body, **ūniversus, -a, -um.**
beset, **circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum.**
ramp, **agger, -eris** (*m*).
touch, **attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactum.**
smoke, **fumō, 1.**
treachery, **perfidia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 157.

waste, **consūmō, -ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum.**
Gergovia, **Gergovia, -ae** (*f*).
revolt, **dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, fectum.**
Santones, **Santones, -um** (*m. pl.*).
madness, **furor, -ōris** (*m*).

invade, **invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum** (*in* + *acc.*).
shatter, **quassō, 1.**
storm, **tempestās, -ātis** (*f*).

EXERCISE 158.

acquit, **absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum.**

EXERCISE 159.

settle affairs (fig.), **pācō, 1.**
party strife, **sēditiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
parties, **factiōnes, -um** (*f. pl.*).
profligate, **improbus, -a, -um; prāvus, -a, -um.**
withdraw (candidature), **petītiōnem relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum.**
indict, **(aliquem) reum faciō.**
assume office, **magistrātum ineō, -īre, -īvī** or **iī, -itum.**
associate, **particeps, participis** (*m*).
attempt, **inceptum, -ī** (*n*).
frustrate, **inhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.**
become known, **precrēbescō, -ere, -crēbuī.**
publish, make known, **dīvulgō, 1.**
malcontent, **invidiōsus, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 160.

win office, **magistrātum obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum.**
secure, **obtineō, 2.**
be over, **praesum, -esse, -fuī** (*dat.*).
powerful, **vehemēns, -entis.**
make clear, **dēmonstrō, 1.**

be unsuccessful (at election), **repellor, -ī, -pulsus sum.**
be over (of office, etc.), **magistrātū mē abdicō.**
intrigue, **insidiae, -arum** (*f*).
weak, **prāvus, -a, -um.**
entertain hope, **in spem veniō.**
rich, **opulentus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 161.

younger nobility, **iuvenēs nōbilēs.**
restless, **turbulentus, -a, -um.**
be favourable to, **inclīnō, 1** (*ad.*).
check, **coerceō, 2.**
grow (*intrans.*), **crescō, -ere, crēvī, crētum.**
power, **potestās, -ātis** (*f*).
foil, **comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.**
day of election, **comitia, -ōrum.**
cuirass, **lōrīca, -ae** (*f*).
bodyguard, **praesidium, -ī** (*n*).
overawe, **terreō, 2.**
supporter, **amīcus, -ī** (*m*).
information, **indicium, -ī** (*n*).
principle, **mōres, -um** (*m*).

EXERCISE 162.

rouse to action, **concitō, 1.**
written evidence, **argumentum, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 163.

banish, **expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum.**
agrarian, **agrārius, -a, -um.**
oppose, **repugnō, 1.**
republican constitution, **rēs publica.**
reject, **repudiō, 1.**
creature, **satelles, -itis** (*m*).
eloquence, **eloquentia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 164.

handsome, **pulcher, -chra, -chrum.**
mystery, sacred rites, **sacra, -ōrum; mystērium, -ī** (*n*).
adopt, **adoptō, 1** (*in*).
shrink, **recūsō, 1.**
dissolute, **perditus, -a -um.**
further (*vb.*), **perficiō.**
plan, **inceptum, -ī** (*n*).
organise, **comparō, 1.**
meet (death), **oppetō, -ere, -īvī** or **iī, -ītum** (*acc.*).

EXERCISE 165.

private enemy, **inimīcus, -ī** (*m*).
commotion, **mōtus, -ūs** (*m*).
bind (strictly), **dēvincio, -īre, -xī, -ctum** (*acc.* + *infin.*).
rostra, **rostra, -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
break (word), **fidem fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum.**
gentlemen (i.e. jury), **iudicēs, -um** (*m. pl.*).
scoundrel, **scelestus, -a, -um.**
innocent, **innocēns, -entis.**

EXERCISE 166.

bully, **homo arrogāns.**
strew, **consternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum.**
no word is said, **silētur.**
champion, **vindex, -icis** (*m*).
frenzy, **furor, -ōris** (*m*).
take by storm, **expugnō, 1.**
bulwark, **praesidium, -ī** (*n*).
Castor, **Castor, -ōris** (*m*).
charge, **crīmen, -inis** (*n*).

EXERCISE 167.

restore, **restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum.**
refer to, **vocō, 1.**
tyrant, **tyrannus, -ī** (*m*).
old, **pristīnus, -a, -um.**
triumvirs, **triumvirī** (*m. pl.*).
disappoint, **fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum.**

EXERCISE 168.

crime, **facinus, -oris** (*n*).
dishonour, **flāgitiō** (*abl.*) **afficiō.**
Tullius, **Tullius, -ī** (*m*).

EXERCISE 169.

applaud, **plaudō, -ere, -sī, -sum** (*dat.*).
save, **servō, 1.**

EXERCISE 170.

Trojan, **Trōiānus, -a, -um.**
Sinon, **Sinon, -ōnis** (*m*).
Hector, **Hector, -ōris** (*m*).
a Greek, **Graecus, -ī** (*m*).
free from care, **sēcūrus, -a, -um.**
prove, **dēmonstrō, 1** (*acc. infin*).
madman, **furēns, -tis.**
endure, **perferō.**
pride, **superbia, -ae** (*f*).
Troy, **Trōia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 171.

political situation, **rēs publica.**
stabilise, **confirmō, 1.**
loiter, **cunctor, 1.**
help, **auxiliō, 1.**
be in office, **magistrātum obtineo. 2.**
amusement, **voluptās, -ātis** (*f*).
act, **gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.**
different, **dissimilis, -e.**

EXERCISE 172.

survive, **supersum, -esse, -fuī.**
trifles, **nūgae, -ārum** (*f*).
happen, **contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tactum.**

EXERCISE 173.

conceited, **arrogāns, -ntis.**
in no way, **nullō modō.**
the latter . . . the former, **hīc . . . ille.**
devoted, **fidēlis, -e (alicui).**
average man, **vulgus, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 174.

absence, **absentia, -ae** (*f*).
than usual, **solitō.**
liable, **obnoxius, -a, -um.**
Carrhae, **Carrhae, -ārum** (*f. pl.*).

EXERCISE 175.

avoid, **vītō, 1.**
blame, **culpa, -ae** (*f*).
unconstitutional, **contrā rem publicam.**
extraordinary, **extraordinārius, -a, -um.**
dispute, **contentiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
settle, **sēdō, 1.**
evacuate, **dēmigrō, 1** (*ab.*).
crossing, **transitus, -ūs** (*m*).
Dyrrachium, **Dyrrachium, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 176.

terrain, **terra, -ae** (*f*).
build round, **circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum** (*acc.* and *dat.*).
break out, **ērumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.**
be mauled, **detrimentum accipiō.**
Thessaly, **Thessalia, -ae** (*f*).

EXERCISE 177.

plan, **cōgitō, 1.**
hoodwink, **ēlūdō, -ere, -sī, -sum.**
I have business, **mihi negōtium est.**
approve of, **probō, 1.**
unanimously, **nullō dissentiente** or **omnēs.**
corrupt, **corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum.**
kingship, **rēgnum, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 178.

rejoice, **gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum.**
appoint, **dīcō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum.**
universal, **omnis.**
unscrupulous, **scelerātus, -a, -um.**
pretend, **simulō, 1.**
conference, **colloquium, -ī** (*n*).

EXERCISE 179.

concentrate (attention), **mē applicō, 1** (*ad.*).
scatter, **dissipō, 1; diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum.**
have respect for, **vereor, -ērī, veritus sum.**

EXERCISE 180.

keep one's head, **esse impavidus, -a, -um.**
erstwhile, **pristinus -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 181.

mean, **avārus, -a, -um.**
crown, **rēgnum, -ī** (*n*).
make a mistake, **peccō, 1.**

EXERCISE 182.

identify oneself, **mē consentiō, -īre, -sensī, -sensum** (*cum.*).
measure, **rogātiō, -ōnis** (*f*).
at least, **saltem.**
appeal to, **implōrō, 1.**

EXERCISE 183.

feel sure of, **confīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum** (*dat.* or *abl.*).
full view, **conspectus, -ūs** (*m*).
entice from, **ēliciō, -ere, -licuī, -licitum.**
unfavourable, **inīquus, -a, -um.**
tent, **tabernāculum, -ī** (*n*).
take down (of tents), **dētendō, -ere** (no *perf.*), **dētensum.**

EXERCISE 184.

main battle, **aciēs, -ēī** (*f*).
express surprise, **admīror, 1.**

EXERCISE 185.

foretell, **praedīcō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum.**
congratulate, **grātulor, 1.**
blame, **culpō, 1.**

greedy, **avidus, -a, -um.**
incapable, **infirmus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 186.

Virgil, **Virgilius, -ī** (*m*).
count, **numerō, 1.**
enterprise, **inceptum, -ī** (*n*).
dismiss, **dīmittō.**
Aeneas, **Aenēas, -ae** (*m*).

EXERCISE 187.

issue of the day, **proeliī ēventus.**
of their own accord, **suā sponte.**
javelin, **pīlum, -ī** (*n*).
breathless, **exanimātus, -a, -um.**
spend (e.g. strength), **consūmō, -ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum.**

EXERCISE 188.

betake oneself, **mē conferō.**

EXERCISE 189.

suppliant, **supplex, -icis** (*m*).

EXERCISE 190.

Alexander, **Alexander, -drī** (*m*).
earth, **tellūs, -ūris** (*f*).
flat, **plānus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE 191.

task, duty, **officium, -ī** (*n*).
entrust, **permittō.**

EXERCISE 192.

subdue, **devincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum.**
be present, **intersum, -esse, -fuī** (*dat.*).
fill up, **suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.**

EXERCISE 194.

disband, **dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum.**

EXERCISE 195.

tribesman, **tribūlis, -is** (*m*).
Sicilian, **Siculī, -ōrum** (*m. pl.*).

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

A, ab

From east to west.	**Ab ortu ad occasum.**
In the rear.	**A tergo.**
On the right.	**A dextra.**
To win a victory over the Aedui.	**Victoriam reportare ab Aeduis.**

Ad

The battle fought near Cannae.	**Pugna ad Cannas facta.**
Till late at night.	**Ad multam noctem.**
The fort faces east.	**Castellum ad solem spectat.**
Oarsmen.	**Servi ad remum.**
To the end.	**Ad ultimum.**
To the point.	**Ad rem.**
Useful for war.	**(Res) utiles ad bellum.**
Opportunely.	**Ad tempus.**
About fifteen thousand.	**Ad quindecim milia.**

Apud

In my house (*cf.* chez moi).	**Apud me.**
To make a speech before the senate.	**Apud senatum verba facere.**
In the writings of Livy.	**Apud Livium.**

Cum

He embraced him with many tears.	**Multis cum lacrimis eum complexus est.**
At dawn.	**(Cum) prima luce.**
To live virtuously.	**Vivere cum virtute.**
He deals with us.	**Nobiscum ei est res.**
Carefully.	**Cum diligentia.**

De

In the day time.	**De die.**
They were striving for pre-eminence.	**De principatu contendebant.**
In my opinion.	**De mea sententia.**
Unexpectedly.	**De improviso.**
It is all over with me.	**Actum est de me.**
What will become of us.	**Quid de nobis fiet.**
We were speaking about the battle.	**De pugna loquebamur.**

E, ex

To fight on horseback.	**Ex equo pugnare.**
A man from Gaul.	**Quidam e Gallia.**
Opposite the town.	**E regione oppidi.**
On the march.	**Ex itinere.**
Since (of time).	**Ex quo.**
According to custom.	**E consuetudine.**
He did this for the good of the state.	**Hoc e republica fecit.**
Purposely.	**Ex industria.**

In

For a day.	**In diem.**
He lets the war drag on into the winter.	**Bellum in hiemem ducit.**
His confidence turned into anxiety.	**In sollicitudinem versa est fiducia.**
The treaty was drawn up in these words.	**Foedus in haec verba conscriptum est.**
For ever.	**In perpetuum.**
From year to year.	**In singulos annos.**
During his consulship.	**In eius consulatu.**
While reading.	**In legendo.**
At present.	**In praesentia.**
To be before the public.	**In oculis esse.**
As far as in me lies.	**Quantum in me est.**
On the whole.	**In summa.**
It is on the point of. . . .	**In eo est, ut. . . .**

Inter

They speak different languages.	**Linguā inter se differunt.**
They speak ill of one another.	**Inter se obtrectant.**

Per

During three years.	**Per triennium.**
In jest.	**Per iocum.**
It was owing to you. . . .	**Per te stetit quominus. . . .**
Under a pretence of friendship.	**Per simulationem amicitiae.**

Post

After dinner.	**Post cenam.**

Prae

On account of the number of javelins.	**Prae iaculorum multitudine.**
He cannot speak for weeping.	**Prae lacrimis loqui non potest.**

Pro

On behalf of our country.	**Pro patria.**
They use shells for coins.	**Pro nummo conchis utuntur.**
To know for certain.	**Pro certo habere.**
To behave like a citizen.	**Se pro cive gerere.**
To show gratitude for kindnesses.	**Gratiam pro beneficiis reddere.**

Sub

To retreat up to the wall.	**Ad murum pedem referre.**
At nightfall.	**Sub noctem.**
To send under the yoke.	**Sub iugum mittere.**
To be under the rule of Rome.	**Sub imperio populi Romani esse.**
To be under arms.	**Sub armis esse.**

PHRASES

MEN—Character

he shows courage, **virum fortem se praebet.**
it is the duty of (a good consul), **est boni consulis.**
it is my (thy) duty, **meum (tuum) est.**
to possess much influence, **multum valere.**
to be influential, **multum posse.**
this reckless courage, **haec tanta audacia.**
that great liberality of yours, **ista tanta liberalitas.**
to raise one's spirits, **animos tollere** (*dat.*).
to become down-hearted, **animum demittere.**
to preserve one's equanimity, **aequo animo esse.**
in accordance with his usual impetuosity, **ut erat violentus** (or) **pro solita eius violentia.**
highly gifted, **bona indole praeditus.**
a man of proved loyalty, **vir spectatae fidei.**
to render disloyal, **aliquem a fide abducere.**
to respect, **in honore habere.**
to dishonour, **ignominiā afficere.**
a great man, **vir praeclarus.**
to keep one's word, **fidem praestare.**
to break one's word, **fidem fallere.**
a man of the highest ability, **vir summi ingenii.**
to the best of one's ability, **pro virili parte.**
a man of sound judgment, **vir magno consilio.**
to return to one's senses, **ad sanitatem redire.**
to make a supreme effort, **summa ope eniti.**

MAN—Mental Processes

a reasonable action, **aliquid cum causa facere.**
an unreasonable action, **aliquid sine causa facere.**
his chief reason for doing this, **id ea maxime ratione fecit.**
I agree with Marcus, **cum Marco sentio.**
I disagree entirely with Marcus, **a Marco omnino dissentio.**
to make an agreement between themselves, **inter se consentire.**
to maintain friendly relations with, **amicus esse** (gen.).

to be sympathetic towards, **inclinare ad.**
to be annoyed, **graviter ferre.**
ambition, **cupiditas imperii.**
to possess more initiative, **conatu plus valere.**
sense of fairness, **animi aequitas.**
according to my opinion, **meā sententiā** (*abl.*).
the problem was, **quaesitum est.**
to be inspired by the gods, **divinitus scire.**

POLITICAL

Cicero was asked for his views, **Cicero sententiam rogatus est.**
to hold an assembly, **comitia habere.**
to disturb the state, **rem publicam turbare.**
the power of Rome, **res Romana.**
to come to the throne, **ad regnum pervenire.**
to administer the republic, **rem publicam gerere.**
revolution, **res novae.**
the conservative party, **optimates.**
politics, **res publica.**
to be a candidate for the (consulship), **(consulatum) petere.**
to pay tribute, **vectigal pendere.**
pass a decree, **decernere,** (or) **consultum facere.**
the powers of government, **summa rerum.**
to frame a policy, **consilium inire.**
to overturn the constitution. **rem publicam evertere.**
repeal legislation, **leges abrogare.**
the popular idol, **gratiosissimus apud plebem.**
a patriot, **civis bonus.**
to grasp the reins of government, **sedere ad gubernacula rei publicae.**
to enter upon a (consulship), **(consulatum) inire.**
to restore the position of Rome, **rem Romanam restituere.**
members of the democratic party, **ii qui partibus popularibus favent.**
ladder of office, **honoris gradus.**
enter political life, **ad rempublicam se conferre.**
the extreme section, **abiecti homines et perditi.**
banish, **in exsilium pellere.**
demagogues, **turbulenti cives et vulgi turbatores.**
democratic government, **civitas popularis.**
canvass the electors, **suffragatores comparare.**

MILITARY

how great is the army, **quantus est exercitus.**
to be at war with, **bellum gerere cum** (*abl.*).

to suffer a disaster, **cladem accipere.**
to give battle, **proelium committere cum** (*abl.*).
to make an attack on the enemy, **impetum in hostes facere.**
supreme command, **summa imperii.**
he saw affairs were in a critical position, **rem esse in angusto vidit.**
deeds, **res gestae.**
to take to flight, **terga dare.**
to declare war on, **bellum indicere** (*dat.*).
a mortal wound, **vulnus mortiferum.**
to pile the baggage, **sarcinas congerere.**
by weight of numbers, **multitudine** (e.g. **suorum).**
to receive the surrender of, **in deditionem accipere.**
to give allegiance to Caesar, **fidem Caesaris sequi.**
to win the day, **victoriam reportare** (*ab.*).
to hold one's ground, **in loco perstare.**
in light marching order, **expeditus, -a, -um.**
an unfavourable position, **iniquus locus.**
advance guard, **primum agmen.**
to be in difficulties, **laborare.**
rear guard, **novissimum agmen.**
the Romans are in desperate case, **Romani suis rebus diffidunt.**
at such a crisis, **in tanto rerum discrimine.**
to leave the ranks, **ab signis discedere.**
to take the offensive, **aggredi.**
hold a levy, **delectum habere.**
under arms, **in armis.**
by assault, **vi et armis.**
fight a naval battle, **proelium navale facere.**
to be on the march, **in itinere esse.**
to push on, **iter non intermittere.**
in the very moment of victory, **victoria iam explorata.**
picked troops, **delecti milites.**
a bellicose spirit, **paratus ad dimicandum animus.**
without bloodshed, **sine vulnere.**
in this style of fighting, **hoc in genere pugnae.**
military resources, **opes et copiae belli.**
organise the defence, **parare omnia ad propulsandum hostem.**
a consummate general, **dux rei militaris peritissimus.**
experience in war, **rei militaris usus.**
at close quarters, **comminus.**
within range, **ad teli coniectum.**
be in supreme command, **summam imperii tenere.**
make contact with (the enemy), **occurrere** (*dat.*).
take open order, **manipulos laxare.**

do one's utmost, **operam navare.**
effect a junction with, **coniungere suas copias** (*dat.* or *cum., abl.*).
war worn troops, **milites labore et proeliis confecti.**
fight a decisive engagement, **decertare proelio.**

TIME

once upon a time, **olim.**
thirteen years old, **tredecim annos natus.**
the month of March, **mensis Martius.**
much later, **multo post.**
a little before, **paulo ante.**
on the day before, **pridie.**
on the day after, **postridie.**
a march of two (three) days, **iter bidui (tridui).**
at the beginning of spring, **initio veris, vere ineunte.**
in the height of summer, **summa aestate.**
in the depth of winter, **summa hieme.**
as soon as, **ubi primum.**
a few years after he left Rome, **paucis post annis quam Roma discessit.**
one night's rest, **spatium unius noctis ad quietem.**
in my time, **meis temporibus.**
allow a day to pass, **diem intermittere.**
in these perilous times, **in hoc tam periculoso tempore.**
he failed me in my hour of need, **tempori meo defuit.**
gain time, **spatium nancisci.**
spend time, **tempus terere, tempus agere.**
at the decisive moment, **momento temporis.**
yearly, **quotannis.**
space of two years, **biennium.**
day after day, **diem ex die.**
daily, **in singulos dies.**
by day, **interdiu.**
in the forenoon, **ante meridiem.**
in the early evening, **primo vespere.**
by night, **noctu.**
first quarter of night, **prima vigilia.**
to-day, **hodie.**
yesterday, **heri.**
to-morrow, **cras.**
daily, **cotidie,** *adj.* **cotidianus.**
just after, **subinde.**
nowadays, **his temporibus.**
at that time, **tum temporis.**

MISCELLANEOUS

to lose an opportunity, **amittere occasionem.**
to hold a festival, **ludos facere.**
to assemble before . . ., **convenire ad . . .**
news has come, **nuntiatum est.**
elders, **maiores natu.**
to tell a wonderful story, **mirabilia dicere.**
to make a bridge over a river, **pontem in flumine facere.**
the world, **orbis terrarum.**
to threaten someone with death, **mortem alicui minari.**

to seize the opportunity, **occasionem capere.**
to go to meet, **obviam ire** (*dat.*).
a desperado, **perditus homo.**
to await the issue, **eventum rei experiri.**
to reserve for another tmie, **ad aliud tempus reservare.**
without success, **re infecta.**
movable property, **res.**
matters are in this position, **ita res se habet.**
to enlist sympathy, **aliquem alicui conciliare.**
to bribe, **pecunia corrumpere.**
not to act like the rest, **nihil earum rerum facere.**
to seek Caesar's protection, **Caesaris fidem sequi.**
history tells us, **traditum est memoriae.**
it is exceedingly opportune, **satis opportune accidit.**
it was very inconvenient, **perincommode accidit.**
to ride the storm, **tempestatem ferre.**
to concentrate everything into one's own hands, **contrahere omnia ad se.**
to swell the numbers, **multitudinem augere.**
root and branch, **ab stirpe.**
to build a road, **viam munire.**
to work early and late, **vigilare laborareque.**
how much profit, **quantum boni.**
quicker than might have been expected, **celerius omni opinione.**
reserve of gallant gentlemen, **virorum fortium copia.**
take a step, **haec facere.**
try every ruse, **omnia experiri.**
be involved in turmoil, **in rerum perturbatione versari.**
submit to the sway of, **esse sub dicione** (gen.).
be heavily in debt, **aere alieno opprimi.**
campaign of open violence, **rem gerere vi et armis.**
a shaft was aimed (fig.), **arcus intentus est.**
at the will of, **ad arbitrium** (gen.).
put everything to the touch, **fortunam experiri.**
render an account, **rationem reddere.**
depend on valour, **in virtute constare.**
it is all over with, **actum est de.**
to make profits from, **lucra facere.**

PLACE

the top of the mountain, **summus mons.**
the middle of the river, **medium flumen.**
the foot of the hill, **imus collis.**
the city of Rome, **urbs Roma.**
up stream, **adverso flumine.**
down stream, **secundo flumine.**
at home and in the field, **domi et militiae.**
from the countryside, **ex agris.**

to provide a way into, **aditum dare** (in + *acc.*).
on land and sea, **terra marique.**
into the heart of (a country), **in interiorem partem.**
north, **septentriones** (*pl.*).
south, **meridies.**
west, **occidens, solis occasus.**
east, **oriens, solis ortus.**
faces the south, **spectat ad meridiem.**
lies to the west, **vergit in occidentem.**
drive, **curru vehi.**
sail, **in navi vehi.**
ride, **in equo vehi.**

CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

to condemn to death, **capitis damnare.**
to torture, **(aliquem) supplicio afficere.**
to bring to trial, **(aliquem) reum facere.**
to give evidence, **testimonium dicere.**
extortion, **res repetundae.**
inflict punishment on, **poenas sumere de.**
lawyer, **peritus iuris civilis.**
give judgment, **ius dicere.**
pay the penalty, **poenas dare.**

GENERAL VOCABULARY

A.

abandon, **relinquo.**
abandon (something begun), **desisto** (*ab.*).
ability, **ingenium.**
able, be, **possum.**
about (of place), **circum;** (of time), **circiter** (*adv.* or *prep.*); (= concerning) **de.**
abuse, **abutor** (*abl.*).
accomplices, **satellites scelerum.**
accomplish, **perficio, conficio.**
accuse, **accuso.**
accustomed, be, **soleo.**
acquire, **adipiscor.**
acquit, **absolvo.**
across, **trans** (*acc.*).
act, **gero.**
actually, **re vera.**
add, **addo, adiungo.**
address, **alloquor.**
address soldiers, **contionor (1).**
admit, **fateor, confiteor.**
adopt, **adopto (1).**
advance, **progredior.**
adversity, **res adversae.**
advocate (a policy), (*vb.*), **suadeo.**
(of a policy), (*n*), **suasor, -oris** (*m*).
Aedui, **Aedui.**
affability, **comitas.**
affect, **moveo.**
after, **post** (*prep.* + *acc.* and *adv.*); after these things, **posthac, postea.**
again, **rursus.**
again and again, **semel atque iterum.**
against, **contra.**
age, **aetas, tempora** (*n. pl.*).
agrarian, **agrarius, -a, -um.**
alarm, (*vb.*), **terreo (2), conturbo (1).**
alive, **vivus.**
all (general word), **omnis, -e** (the whole), **totus, -a, -um.** (together), **cunctus, -a, -um.**
alliance, **societas.**
allow, **sino.**
ally, **socius, -ii** (*m*).
along, **per** (+ *acc.*).
Alps, **Alpes, -ium** (*f*).
already, **iam.**
always, **semper.**
ambassador, **legatus, -i** (*m*).
am between, **intersum** (*dat.*).
ambush **insidiae.**
amusement, **voluptas.**
ancestors, **maiores.**
and, **et, atque, -que,** *see* note p. 282.
and so, **itaque.**
angry, be, **fero graviter.**
announce, **nuntio (1).**
annoy, **vexo (1).**
anxious (to be), **cupio.**

anyone, **quivis.**
appeal to, **imploro (1).**
appeal for (help), **peto.**
appoint, **creo (1), dico (3).**
appoint to the command of, **praeficio.**
appointment (i.e. the office of governor) (*n*), **praefectura, -ae** (*f*).
applaud, **plaudo.**
apportion, **attribuo.**
approach, (*vb.*); **adeo, appropinquo.**
(*n*), **adventus, -ūs** (*m*).
(e.g., to a gate), **aditus, -ūs** (*m*),
(of a person), **adventus, -ūs** (*m*).
approve of, **probo (1).**
arduous, **laborosus.**
armour, arms, **arma, -orum** (*n*).
army, **exercitus, -us** (*m*).
arrest, **comprehendo.**
arrival, **adventus, -us** (*m*).
arrive, **pervenire ad.**
arrow, **sagitta.**
art, **ars, artis** (*f*).
as (see p. 86).
as has been said, **ut supra demonstravimus.**
as if, **velut.**
ascendancy, **summa rerum.**
ask, **rogo** (see p. 3).
ask questions, **interrogo.**
assistance, **auxilium.**
associate, **particeps, -cipis.**
as soon as possible, **quam primum.**
assume (office), **ineo.**
Athens, **Athenae.**
at least, **saltem.**
at once, **statim.**
at the one moment, **uno tempore.**
attack, **aggredior.**
attack (make), **impetum facere** (*in.*).
attempt (*n*), **inceptum.**
(*vb.*), **conor (1).**
attend, **adsum.**
attract, **adduco.**
August, **Sextilis.**
authority, **auctoritas, -atis** (*f*).
authority (person), **auctor.**
avarice, **avaritia.**
avenge, **vindico (1).**
avoid, **vito (1).**

B.

bad, **malus, -a, -um.**
baggage, **impedimenta** (*n. pl.*).
bank, **ripa, -ae** (*f*).
barbarian, **barbarus, -i** (*m*).
be, to, **sum, esse, fui.**
bear (carry) **portare, ferre.**
(endure), **patior, ferre.**
bear (children), **pario.**
bear witness to, **testor (1).**
beard, **barba, -ae** (*f*).
because, **quod.**
become known, **percrebesco divulgo.**
become the ally, **me adiungo (cum).**
beg for, **oro (1).**
begin, **incipio.**
begin to dawn, **illucesco.**
beginning, **initium, origo, -inis** (*f*).
behold, **conspicio.**

belong, **in potestate esse.**
benefit, **prosum** (*dat.*).
be over (= in command), **praesum** (*dat.*).
beset, **circumvenio.**
besiege, **obsideo.**
betake oneself, **me confero.**
bind (strictly), **devincio.**
bind by (affection), **iungo.**
birth, **ortus, -us** (*m*).
bitter foe, **infestus** (*adj.*).
bitterly, **acerbe.**
blame, **culpa, -ae** (*f*).
blame, to, **culpo (1).**
blameworthy, **culpā dignus.**
board, **in navem conscendere.**
boast, **glorior (1).**
boat, **linter, -tris** (*f*).
body, **corpus, -oris** (*n*).
body, in a, **universus, -a, -um.**
bodyguard, **praesidium.**
book, **liber, libri** (*m*).
bordering on, **attingens.**
borrow, **mutuor (1).**
bottom (see p. 18).
boundaries, **fines, -ium** (*m*).
box, **arca, -ae** (*f*).
boy, **puer, pueri** (*m*).
brave, **fortis, -e.**
bravely, **fortiter.**
break camp, **castra moveo.**
break down, **rescindo.**
break (laws), **violo (1).**
break out, **orior, erumpo.**
break through, **perrumpo.**
break (word), **fidem fallo.**
breathless, **exanimatus.**
bribed, be, **largitionibus moveri, corrumpi.**
bridge, **pons, pontis** (*m*).
bridge of piles, **pons sublicius.**
bring a message, **affero.**
bring forward a bill, **rogationem fero.**
bring (of persons), **adduco.**
bring hope, **spem infero.**
bring to an end, **perficio.**
bring up, **educo (1).**
briskly, **acriter.**
brook (*vb.*), **tolero (1).**
build, **aedifico (1).**
build around, **circumdo.**
bulwark, **praesidium.**
burden, **onus, oneris** (*n*).
burden (fig.), **labor, -oris** (*m*).
bury, **sepelio.**
business man, **negotiator.**
busy (oneself), be busy, **versor (1).**
but, **sed.**
butcher, **trucido (1).**
buy, **emo.**
by chance, **casu, forte.**
by name, **nomine.**
by no means, **nequaquam.**
by reason of, **ob** (*acc.*).
by the presence of, **praesens** (*adj.*).

C.

Caesar, **Caesar, -aris.**
call (summon), **vocare (1). arcessĕre.**
(name) **vocare (1), appellare (1).**
(call out to), **appellare (1).**
calmly, **placide.**
capital, **urbs, urbis** (*f*).
captive, **captivus, -i** (*m*).
capture, **capio.**
carry, **porto (1).**
carry off, **aufero.**
carry out, **perficio.**

carry on war, **bellum infero** (*dat.*).
Carthage, **Carthago, -inis** (*f*).
Carthaginian, **Carthaginiensis, Poenus.**
cause, (*vb.*), **curo (1).**
cause panic, to, **pavorem inicio** (*dat.*).
cease, **desisto, desino.**
celebrate, **celebro (1).**
censor, **censor, -oris** (*m*).
centre, **media acies.**
century, **centuria, -ae** (*f*).
certain, **quidam, quaedam, quoddam.**
champion, **propugnator.**
champion, **vindex, -icis.**
chance, by, **forte, casu.**
check, **coerceo (2).**
checkmate, **reprimo.**
chief, **princeps, -ipis.**
choose, **eligo.**
Cicero, **Cicero, -onis.**
citadel, **arx, arcis** (*f*).
citizen, **civis, -is.**
citizenship, **civitas, -atis** (*f*).
city, **urbs, urbis** (*f*).
civilised, **humanus.**
civil war, **bellum civile.**
clever, **callidus.**
client (legal), **consultor,**
(i.e. retainer), **cliens.**
cliff, **saxum, -i** (*n*).
climb, **ascendo.**
cohort, **cohors, -tis** (*f*).
colleague, **collega.**
collect, **colligo, cogo.**
colony, **colonia, -ae** (*f*).
come, **venio.**
about, **evenio.**
to the help of, **subvenio** (*dat.*).
within an ace of, **minime abfuit quin.**
comfort, **consolor (1).**
command (of a general), **imperium, -ii** (*n*).
command, to be in, **praeesse.**
commander-in-chief, **imperator.**
commerce, **merx, mercis** (*f*).
commit, **committo.**
common good, **salus communis.**
commotion, **motus, -us** (*m*).
company, **manipulus, -i** (*m*).
compel, **cogo.**
complain, **queror.**
complete (a journey), **conficio.**
conceited, **adrogans.**
concentrate (attention), **me adplico.**
conciliate, **concilio (1).**
confer a command, **imperium defero.**
confer citizenship, **civitate donare** (*acc.*)
conference, **colloquium.**
confusion, in, **perturbatus.**
congratulate, **gratulor (1).**
consider, **existimo (1).**
consolidate, **confirmo (1).**
conspicuous, **singularis.**
consul, **consul, -ulis.**
consult, **consulo,**
the interests of, **consulo** (*dat.*).
contented, **contentus.**
content, to be (= I wish), **volo.**
continually, **semper, continenter, assidue.**
convenient, **commodus.**
converse with, **colloquor (cum).**
cope with, **par esse** (*dat.*).

corn, **frumentum.**
corrupt, **corrumpo.**
cottage, **casa, -ae** (*f*).
council of the people, **concilium plebis.**
count, **numero (1).**
country (territory), **agri.**
country (opposed to town), **rus, ruris** (*n*).
country (pol.), **civitas** (*f*).
respublica (*f*).
(fig.), **cives.**
country-house, **villa, -ae** (*f*).
countryman, **agrestis.**
countryman, fellow, **civis.**
countryside, **agri.**
courage, **virtus, -utis** (*f*).
court, **iudicium.**
courteously, **comiter.**
coward, **ignavus.**
cowardice, **ignavia, -ae** (*f*).
creature, **satelles, -itis.**
creditor, **creditor.**
Crete, **Creta, -ae** (*f*).
crew, **nautae.**
crime, **facinus, -oris** (*n*).
scelus, -eris (*n*).
cross, **transeo.**
crossing, **transitus, -us** (*m*).
crowd, **multitudo, -inis** (*f*)
crowds, in, **frequens** (*adj.*).
crown, **regnum.**
cruelty, **crudelitas, -atis** (*f*).
cuirass, **lorica, -ae** (*f*).
cunning (*n*) **astutia, -ae** (*f*), **callidus** (*adj.*).
cut off, **intercludo.**
cut to pieces, **trucido (1).**

D.

daily, **cotidianus,**
dangerous, **periculosus.**

M

dare, **audeo.**
dart, **telum.**
dash, **impetus, -us** (*m*).
dash out, **evolo (1).**
daughter, **filia, -ae** (*f*).
day, **dies, -ei** (*m*).
day break, **prima luce.**
day of election, **comitia, -orum.**
dead, **mortuus.**
decrease, **deminuo.**
deed, **factum, facinus, -oris.**
deem, **puto (1).**
deep, **altus.**
defeat, **vinco.**
defeat (in an election), **repello.**
defender, **defensor.**
defile, **saltus, -us** (*m*).
delay, **moror (1).**
deliberate, **delibero (1).**
demand, **flagito (1), postulo (1), posco (3).**
depart, **discedo, abeo.**
depend upon, **pass. of pono.**
deploy, **instruo.**
deprive, **spolio (1).**
derision, **irrisio, -onis** (*f*).
descendants, **proles, -is** (*f*), **posteri, nati** (*ex*).
descend upon, **incido.**
desire (*vb.*), **cupio.**
(*n*) **cupido, -inis** (*f*); **studium, -ii.**
desist, **desisto (3).**
desperate position, **extremae res.**
despise, **contemno.**
destroy, **deleo, attero.**
destroy (things), **diruo.**
determine, **constituo.**
devoted, **fidelis, -e.**

devote (myself) to, **studeo** (*dat.*).
devote oneself to a profession, **elaborare in scientia.**
dictator, **dictator.**
differ, **differo, disto.**
difficult circumstances, **magnae difficultates.**
dig, **fodio.**
dinner, **cena, -ae** (*f*).
dirty, **sordidus.**
disaffected, **seditiosus.**
disappoint, **fallo.**
disaster, **clades, -is** (*f*). **calamitas.**
discipline (*n*), **disciplina, -ae** (*f*).
discipline (*vb.*), **exerceo (2).**
disgraceful, **turpis.**
dishonour, to, **summo dedecore afficere.**
dismiss, **dimitto.**
dislodge, **depello, propello, deicio.**
disobey, **non pareo** (*dat.*).
disregard, **contemno.**
distant, to be, **absum.**
distressed, **miser, -era, -erum.**
distribute, **distribuo.**
disturbance, **discordia, -ae** (*f*).
ditch, **fossa, -ae** (*f*).
do duty, **officio fungor.**
don, **induo.**
drag, **traho.**
draw (a sword), **destringo.**
draw up, **instruo.**
dreadful, **terribilis.**
dressed, **indutus.**
drive out, **expello.**
driven, be hard, **laboro.**
drown, **submergo.**
duty, **munus, -eris** (*n*).

E.

eager, **cupidus.**
earthwork, **agger, -eris** (*m*).
eat, **vescor.**
elect, **creo (1).**
election, **comitia, -orum.**
elephant, **elephantus.**
elude, **effugio.**
embarrass, **difficultate afficere.**
embarrassed, be, **laboro (1).**
emphasise (= assert as true), **affirmo (1).**
empty, **inanis.**
encamp, **consido, castra pono.**
encourage, **hortor (1).**
encumber, **impedio (4).**
end, **conficio.**
end (*n*), **finis** (*m* and *f*).
endure, **perfero.**
enemy, **hostis.**
energetic, **impiger.**
engaged in, be, **versor (1).**
engineer, **faber, -ri** (*m*).
enjoy, **fruor** (*abl.*).
enquire, **quaero.**
enroll, **conscribo.**
enter, **ingredior.**
enter alliance with, **societate coniungo** (and *acc.* of pers.).
enterprise, **inceptum, negotium.**
entice from, **elicio.**
entrap—lie in wait for, **insidior (1).**
entrust, **permitto, mando, committo.**
envy, **invideo** (*dat.*).
erstwhile, **pristinus.**
escape, **effugio.**
especially since, **praesertim cum.**

establish, **colloco (1).**
estates, **possessiones.**
Etruscan, **Etruscus.**
evacuate, **discedo, demigro (1).**
evening, **vesper.**
everywhere, **ubique.**
exact, **exigo.**
excite, **moveo.**
exhausted, **confectus.**
exhort, **hortor (1).**
exhortation, **hortatio.**
exile, **in exsilium pello.**
expect, **spero (1).**
expediency, **utilitas.**
expense, **sumptus, -us** (*m*).
exposed, to leave, **nudare.**
express surprise, **miror (1).**
extend, **propago (1), extendo.**
extortion, **res repetundae.**
extravagant, **sumptuosus.**

F.

Faesulae, **Faesulae.**
fail, **deficio.**
fail to, **nequeo.**
faithless, **perfidus.**
fall, **demittor** (pass.), **delabor.**
fall by lot (to someone), **sorte obvenio.**
fall (of a bridge), **corruo.**
fall (to be killed), **cado.**
fame, **laus, laudis** (*f*).
family, **familia, -ae** (*f*), **genus, -eris** (*n*).
famine, **fames, -is** (*f*).
famous, **praeclarus.**
farm, **fundus, -i** (*m*).
far sighted, **providens.**
fasten, **adligo (1).**
father, **pater, -ris.**
favour, **faveo** (*dat.*).
favourable, I am, **inclino (1).**
fear (*n*), **timor.**
(*vb.*), **timeo (2).**
(respect), **vereor (2).**
(dread), **metuo.**
feel sure of, **confido.**
fellow, **homo, -inis.**
fertility, **fertilitas.**
few, **pauci.**
field, **ager, agri** (*m*).
fight, **pugno (1).**
fight a pitched battle, **in acie dimico (1).**
fight hand to hand, **manus consero.**
fight it out, **decerto (1).**
fill up, **suppleo.**
finally—wholly, **omnino.**
finally, **denique, tandem.**
find, **invenio, reperio.**
finally (wholly), **omnino.**
first, **primo.**
first . . . and then, **primum . . . deinde.**
first line, **prima acies.**
fit for, **aptus.**
flank, **latus, -eris** (*n*).
flat, **planus.**
fleet, **classis, -is** (*f*).
flower (of an army), **robur, -oris** (*n*).
fly, **fugio.**
foil, **comprimo.**
follow, **sequor.**
foolish, **stultus.**
foolishness, **inscitia, -ae** (*f*)
for, **nam.**
for (on behalf of), **pro** (*abl.*).
force, (milit.), **exercitus, -us** (*m*).
force (i.e. strength), **vis** (*f*).

forces, **copiae.**
foreign, **externus.**
foretell, **praedico.**
form, **fingo.**
form a plan, **consilium ineo.**
fortifications, **munimenta, -orum.**
fortified, **munitus.**
fortune, **fortuna, -ae** (*f*).
fray, **pugna, -ae** (*f*).
free, **liber, -era, -erum.**
 from care, **securus.**
freedom, **libertas.**
frenzy, **furor.**
frequently, **saepe.**
friend, **amicus, -i** (*m*).
frighten from (doing anything), **deterreo.**
from all sides, **undique.**
 this point, **inde.**
 time to time, i.e. sometimes, **interdum.**
front, **frons, frontis** (*f*).
frustrate, **inhibeo (2).**
full force, in, **summis copiis.**
full view, in, **in conspectu.**
fully, **satis.**
function, **munus, -eris** (*n*).
furnish, **instruo, suppedito, (1).**
further (*adj.*), **ulterior.**
 (*vb.*), **perficio.**

G.

gain, **adipiscor.**
gain possession of, **potior** (*abl.*).
gallant, **fortis.**
game, **ludus, -i** (*m*).
garment, **vestis, -is** (*f*).
gate, **porta, -ae** (*f*).
gather, to, **colligo** (*trans.*).
Gaul, **Gallia.**
Gaul, a, **Gallus.**
general, **imperator.**
general welfare, **communis salus, -utis** (*f*).
generosity, **liberalitas, -atis** (*f*).
gift, **munus, -eris** (*n*).
give, **do.**
glory, **gloria, -ae,** (*f*).
go, **eo.**
 into exile, **in exsilium eo.**
 straight, **contendo.**
God, **Deus.**
gold, **aurum, -i** (*n*).
good, **bonus.**
goodwill, **studium.**
govern, **administro (1).**
grandson, **nepos, -otis.**
grappling iron, **ferrea manus.**
Greece, **Graecia.**
grips, come to, **congredior** (+ *dat.*).
guard (*vb.*), **custodio (4).**
guess, **coniecturā consequor.**

H.

hail, greet, **saluto (1).**
hair, **capillus, -i** (*m*).
halt, **consisto.**
hand, **manus, -us** (*f*).
hand down, **trado.**
hand to hand, **comminus.**
handsome, **pulcher.**
happen, **contingo.**
happiness, **beate vivere.**
harangue, **hortor (1).**
harbour, **portus, -ūs** (*m*).
hardy, **firmus.**
harsh, **acerbus, severus.**
hastily, **praepropere.**
hate, **odi.**

have, **habeo (2).**
headlong, **praeceps.**
headquarters, **praetorium.**
headstrong, **ferox, -ocis.**
heap up, **congero.**
Heaven, **caelum, -i** (*n*).
help (*n*), **auxilium.**
 (*vb.*), **adiuvo (1).**
 come to the, **subvenio** (*dat.*).
hem in, **circumvenio.**
Hermae, **Hermae.**
heroic band, **viri fortes ac strenui.**
hide, **celo (1).**
high minded, **magnanimus.**
highest, **summus, -a, -um.**
hill, **collis, -is** (*m*).
hinder, **impedio (4), prohibeo.**
hindrance, **impedimentum.**
hire, **conduco.**
hold, **contineo.**
hold a levy, **delectum habere.**
home, **sedes, -is** (*f*).
honest, i.e. honourable, **honestus.**
honourable, **honestus.**
honourable behaviour, **honestas, -atis** (*f*).
hoodwink, **eludo.**
hope, **spero (1).**
Horace, **Horatius.**
host, **multitudo, -inis** (*f*).
hostile, **infestus.**
house, **domus, -us** (*f*).
however, **tamen, autem.**
hour, **hora, -ae** (*f*).
huge sum (money), **multa pecunia.**
humble, **humilis.**
hunger, **fames, -is** (*f*).
hurl, **conicio.**
hurry, **festino (1).**
husband, **maritus, -i** (*m*).

I.

identify myself, **consentio** (*cum.*).
Ides, **Idus, -uum** (*f*).
ignorance, **ignorantia, -ae** (*f*).
impetuous, **ferox, -ocis.**
implore, **obsecro (1).**
importance, **dignitas.**
important, **summus.**
impose, **impono.**
inactivity, **nihil agere.**
inborn, **insitus.**
incite, **sollicito (1).**
in confusion, **perturbatus.**
increase, **augeo** (*trans.*)
increase, **cresco** (*intrans.*).
incredible, **incredibilis.**
in crowds, **frequens.**
indeed, **autem, quidem.**
indict, **(aliquem) reum facere.**
indifferent health, **imbecillitas.**
indispensable, **maxime necessarius.**
indomitable, **invictus.**
infantry, **peditatus, -ūs** (*m*), **pedites** (*pl.*).
inflict, **infero** (*acc.* + *dat.*).
inflict punishment, **suppliciō, afficio.**
influence (*n*), **auctoritas.**
influence (*vb.*), **moveo.**
influence, to have great, **multum valere.**
information, **indicium, -i** (*n*).
infuriated, **furibundus.**
inhabit, **teneo, incolo.**
injury, **iniuria, detrimentum.**
inspire, **inicio.**
instruct, **praecipio.**

instruction, **disciplina, -ae** (*f*).
insult, **iniuria, -ae** (*f*).
intend, **in animo habere.**
interior, **pars interior.**
in the field, **cum exercitu.**
in their extremity, **in rebus tam adversis.**
in the morning, **mane.**
in the presence of, **coram** (*abl.*).
in the vicinity of, **ad** (*acc.*).
in time of peace, **in pace.**
into, **in** (*acc.*).
intrigue, **insidiae.**
intrigue, to, **consentio.**
in turn, **invicem.**
invasion, **irruptio, incursio.**
issue, **eventus, -us** (*m*).
issue of the day, **proelii eventus.**
Italian, **Italicus.**

J.

join, **me adiungo, coniungo.**
join battle, **proelium committere.**
judge, **iudex, -icis.**
just (of time), **modo** (*adv.*).
justice, **iustitia, -ae** (*f*).
justifiable, **probandus.**
justly, **iure.**

K.

kindly, **benignus.**
king, **rex, regis.**
kill (general word), **interficere.**
(in fight), **occidere.**
(murder), **iugulare (1).**
(butcher), **trucidare (1).**
(by poison, starvation, etc.), **necare (1).**
kiss, **osculor (1).**
knowledge, **scientia, -ae** (*f*).

L.

lack, I, **mihi deest.**
lady, **femina.**
lake, **lacus, -us** (*m*).
land (*adj.*), **terrestris, -e.**
(earth), **terra, -ae** (*f*).
(the soil), **ager, agri** (*m*).
(territory), **agri** (*pl.*).
language, **lingua, -ae** (*f*).
large, **magnus.**
last, **ultimus.**
laughing stock, **ludibrium.**
law, **lex, legis** (*f*).
lay ambush, **colloco insidias.**
lay aside, **depono.**
lay down, **depono.**
lay waste, **vasto (1).**
lead, **duco.**
lead on, **adduco.**
leader, **dux, ducis.**
leader (chief man), **princeps.**
leaf, **folium.**
league, **civitates foederatae.**
learn, **cognosco, disco.**
learned, **eruditus.**
learning, **disciplina, -ae** (*f*).
lease, **conduco.**
leave, **relinquo.**
leave (behind), **relinquo.**
(a place), **excedo** (*abl.* or *ex.*).
legion, **legio, -onis** (*f*).
less, **minus.**
let loose, **emitto.**
letter, **epistula, -ae** (*f*).
letters, **litterae.**
liable (to prosecution), **obnoxius.**
lie, **mentior (4).**

lie near, **adiaceo.**
lieutenant, **legatus, -i** (*m*).
life, **vita, -ae** (*f*).
life of Rome, **Res Romanae.**
like, just as, **sicut.**
likely, to be, use periphrastic future.
listen to, **audio (4).**
little farm, **agellus, -i** (*m*).
live, **habito (1).**
loiter, **cesso (1), moror (1).**
long (of hair), **promissus.**
long (time), **diutinus.**
longer (time), **diutius.**
(space) **longius.**
look, **specto (1).**
for (i.e. wait for), **exspecto.**
forward to, **provideo.**
lose, **amitto.**
lot, **fortuna.**
luck, by good, **casu.**

M.

made, be, or become, **fio.**
madman, **furens.**
maiden, **puella.**
main battle, **acies, -ei** (*f*).
make a rash move, **rem gerere audacius.**
make a stand, **consisto.**
make clear, **demonstro (1).**
make for, **peto.**
make peace, **pacem confirmo (1), pacem compono.**
man, **homo.**
man (the average), **vulgus, -i** (*n*).
manage to, **perficio.**
manner of life, **mores, -um** (*m*).
manual, **scripta, -orum** (*n*).
march, **contendo, iter facio, duco.**
Mars, **Mars, Martis.**
master, **magister, -tri** (*m*).
match for, **par** (*dat.*).
matter, **res, rei** (*f*).
mauled, be, **detrimentum accipere.**
mean (*vb.*), **significo (1).**
mean, **avarus, -a, -um.**
measure (i.e. a bill), **rogatio.**
Mediterranean, **Mare magnum.**
meet (death), **oppeto.**
memory, **memoria, -ae** (*f*).
men say, **ferunt.**
mercenaries, **(milites), conducti.**
message, **nuntius, -ii** (*m*).
messenger, **nuntius, -ii** (*m*).
midday, **meridies, -ei** (*m*).
midnight, **media nox.**
might and main, **summa vi, summis opibus.**
mild, **mitis.**
miracle, **miraculum.**
modesty, **verecundia, -ae** (*f*).
money, **pecunia, -ae** (*f*).
month, **mensis, -is** (*m*).
mortal (causing death), **mortifer.**
mother, **mater, -tris** (*f*).
mount (*intrans.*), **ascendo.**
mount (*trans.*), **impono.**
mount the ladder of office, **ascendere ad summum honorem.**
mountain, **mons, montis** (*m*).
move, **migro (1), moveo.**
much later, **multo post.**
murder, **caedes, -is** (*f*).
muster, **recenseo.**
mysteries, **sacra, -ōrum.**

N.

name (*vb.*) **dico,** (*n.*) **nomen.**
nation, **populus, -i** (*m*).
civitas, -atis (*f*).
cives (*pl.*).
native land, **patria.**
near, **prope** (*acc.*).
nearest, **proximus.**
nearness, **propinquitas.**
necessaries of life, **necessaria ad usum.**
needy, **egens.**
neighbouring, **vicinus.**
neglect, **neglego.**
new, **novus.**
night, **nox, noctis** (*f*).
no word is said, **siletur.**
nobility, **nobilitas.**
nominal price, at a, **vili.**
none, **nullus.**
not even, **ne . . . quidem.**
nothing, **nihil.**
now, **iam** (already), **nunc** (at this moment.)

O.

oath, **iusiurandum.**
obey, **pareo (2),** (*dat.*).
object, **recuso (1).**
obstinacy, **pertinacia, -ae** (*f*).
obtain, **adipiscor.**
of, about, **de** (*abl.*).
offer, **offero.**
office, **honor, dignitas.**
office, to be in, **magistratum obtineo.**
often, **saepe.**
of one's own accord, **sua sponte.**
old, **pristinus.**
old soldier, **veteranus.**
olive tree, **olea.**
on dry land, **in sicco.**
on their side, **ipsi.**
once (formerly), **olim.**
once, at, **statim.**
once, . . . on the second occasion, **primum . . . deinde.**
one, not, **ne unus quidem.**
only, **solum, modo.**
opinion, **sententia, -ae** (*f*).
opponents, **qui se obiciunt.**
oppose, **me obicio.**
oppress, **opprimo, vexo (1).**
or, **aut, vel.**
order (*n*), command, **iussum.**
(rank), **ordo, -inis** (*m*).
(*vb*), **iubeo, impero (1).**
organise, **comparo (1).**
ought, **debeo (2).**
out of, **ex, de.**
outside, **extra.**
outstanding, **insignis.**
outwit, **dolo capio.**
overawe, **terreo (2).**
overcome, **supero (1).**
overhang, **immineo (2).**
overlong, **diutius.**
overlook, **neglego, impendeo.**
overtake, **consequor.**
overturn, **everto.**
own, **possideo.**
ox, **bos, bovis.**

P.

pacification of Gaul, **Gallia pacata.**
pain, **dolor.**
panic, **pavor.**
pardon (*n*), **venia, -ae** (*f*).
(*vb.*), **ignosco** (*dat.*).
parent, **parens.**

parties, **factiones.**
party strife, **seditio.**
pass (surpass), **supero (1).**
pass, **saltus, -us** (*m*).
pass by, **praetereo.**
past (the), **praeterita** (*n. pl.*).
patience, **patientia, -ae** (*f*).
patient, **patiens.**
pay (soldier's), **stipendium, -i** (*n*).
peace, **pax, pacis** (*f*).
peak, **cacumen, -inis** (*n*).
people, **plebs, -is** (*f*).
gens, gentis (*f*).
people of Veii, **Veientes.**
perform, **fungor** (*abl.*).
period, **aevum, -i** (*n*).
persuade, **persuadeo, suadeo.**
picked troops, **delecti.**
picket, **statio, -onis** (*f*).
pig, **sus, suis.**
Piso, **Piso.**
pitch a camp, **castra pono.**
place (*n.*), **locus, -i** (*m*).
(*vb.*) **pono.**
colloco (1).
plain, **campus, planities.**
plan, **consilium, inceptum.**
plan, **cogito (1).**
Plato, **Plato.**
pleasure, **voluptas.**
plenty of ability, **summa vis ingenii.**
plot, **coniuratio, -onis** (*f*).
plough, **aro (1).**
plough-land, **culta, -orum.**
plunder, **diripio.**
political, **civilis.**
political opponents (use name of opposite party).
political situation, **res publica.**
politics, **res publica** (not in *pl.*).
population, **multitudo hominum, cives.**
poor, **pauper, -eris.**
position, **fortuna, res, potentia.**
possess influence, **valeo (2).**
post, **colloco (1).**
power, **potestas, auctoritas, imperium.**
powerful, **potens.**
praetor, **praetor.**
praise oneself, **se laudare.**
praiseworthy, **laudandus.**
pray, **oro (1), precor (1).**
prefer, **malo, antepono.**
present, be, **adsum, intersum.**
pretext, **causa.**
prevent, **inhibeo (2).**
priest, **sacerdos.**
prison, **carcer, -eris** (*m*).
prisoner, **captivus.**
privilege, **ius, iuris** (*n*).
profligate, **improbus.**
promise, **polliceor, promitto.**
propose a bill, **rogationem fero.**
prosecute, **accuso (1).**
prosper, **floreo.**
prosperity, **res secundae.**
prosperous, **prosperus, -era, -erum.**
protect, **tueor (2).**
protection, **praesidium.**
proud, **superbus.**
prove, **demonstro (1).**
prove, show oneself, **me praebeo (2).**
provide money, **pecuniam confero.**

province, **provincia.**
provisions, **cibus, -i** (*m*), **commeatus, -us** (*m*).
prudence, **prudentia.**
push on, **procedo.**
put on board, **in navem imponere.**
put to rout, **fugo (1).**

Q.

qualities, **vis ingenii.**
quarrel, **iurgo (1).**
quell, **comprimo.**
question (*n*), **res.**

R.

race, **gens, gentis** (*f*).
raid, **incursio.**
rally, **se colligere.**
rampart, **vallum.**
rank, **ordo, -inis** (*m.*).
rank and file, **reliqui.**
ratify, **ratum aliquid facio.**
read, **lego.**
ready, **paratus.**
real, **verus.**
realise, **sentio.**
rear (guard), **novissimum agmen.**
rear rank, **novissimus ordo.**
reason, **causa.**
rebuild, **reficio.**
receive (wound), **accipio.**
reckless, **incautus, audax, -acis.**
recognise, **agnosco.**
recount, **expono.**
re-elect, **reficio.**
refer to, **voco (1).**
refuge, **perfugium.**
refuse, **recuso (1), respuo.**
regain, **recupero (1).**
reinforce, **suppleo.**
reinforcements, **novae copiae, supplementum.**
reject, **repudio (1), repello.**
related by marriage, **affinitate coniungi.**
reluctant, **invitus.**
remain, **maneo, commoror (1).**
remain quiet, **quiesco.**
remove, **amoveo.**
renew battle, **proelium redintegro (1).**
reorganise, **restituo.**
repel, **propulsare.**
reply, **respondeo.**
republic, **res publica.**
republican constitution, **res publica.**
reputation, **fama.**
rescue, **e periculo eripio.**
resent, **in malam partem accipere.**
reserve, **reservo (1).**
resign, **depono.**
resign an office, **magistratu me abdico.**
resist, **impetum sustineo.**
resolute, **fortis.**
resolution, **constantia.**
resort to, **utor, descendo ad.**
resourceful, **paratus ad omnia.**
respect, **honoro (1), venero (1).**
respect for, **verecundia.**
restless, **turbulentus.**
restrain, **reprimo.**
resume, **recipio.**
retire (see retreat).
retreat, **pedem refero, me recipio.**
return (*intrans.*), **redeo, revenio.**
return (*trans.*), **reddo.**
return (*n*), **reditus, -ūs** (*m*).
reveal, **aperio.**

reverse, **clades, -is** (*f*).
review, **recenseo.**
Rhine, **Rhenus.**
Rhone, **Rhodanus.**
right, **ius, iuris** (*n.*).
rightly, **iure.**
rigour, **periculum.**
riot, **tumultus, ūs** (*m.*)
rioting, **tumultus, -us** (*m*).
rival, **aemulus.**
river, **flumen, -inis** (*n*); **fluvius, -i** (*m*).
road, **via; iter, itineris** (*n*).
rob, **eripio.**
robber, **latro.**
rock, **saxum.**
Romans, **Romani.**
Rome, **Roma.**
rout, **fugo (1).**
row, **remis impello** (*trans.*), **remigo (1).**
ruined, **profligatus.**
rule, **rego.**
rumour, **fama.**
run, **curro.**
rush together, **concurro.**
rush upon, **irruo.**
rustic, **agrestis.**

S.

sacred, **sacer, -ra, -rum.**
safe, **tutus.**
sail, **navem solvo.**
salute, **saluto (1).**
saviour, **servator.**
say, **dico,** (not) **nego.**
say, men, **ferunt.**
scarcity, **inopia.**
scatter, **dissipo.**
scout, **explorator.**
sea, **mare.**
sea-coast, **ora maritima.**
sea-faring, **maritimus.**
seat, **sella.**
secretary, **scriba.**
secure (election), **obtineo.**
secure advantage, **prosum.**
see, **conspicio, specto (1), video.**
see to it, **curo (1).**
seek, **peto, quaero.**
seek = try, **conor (1).**
seem, **videor.**
seize, **rapio.**
seldom, **raro** (*adv.*).
self-satisfaction, **sibi placere.**
sell, **vendo.**
senate, **senatus, -us** (*m*).
senatehouse, **curia, -ae** (*f*).
senator, **senator.**
senatorial party, **senatores.**
send, **mitto.**
send away, **amitto.**
send forward, **praemitto.**
send to the help of, **submitto.**
sentry, **custos, -odis.**
seriously, **graviter.**
seriousness of the campaign, **bellum grave et periculosum.**
serve, **prosum, servio (4).**
serve as cavalry, **equo mereo, -ēre.**
set about, **coepi, incipio.**
set aside, **sepono.**
set out, **proficiscor.**
settle, **sedeo.**
settle affairs, **paco (1).**
severity, **severitas.**
shameful, **foedus.**
share, **participo (1).**
sharer, **particeps.**
shatter, **quasso (1).**
sheathe, **in vaginam recondo.**
shepherd, **pastor.**
ship, **navis, -is** (*f*).

short, **brevis.**
shout, **clamor.**
show, **spectaculum.**
show myself, **me praebeo.**
shrink, **recuso (1).**
shut off, **intercludo.**
Sicily, **Sicilia.**
siege, **obsidio, -onis** (*f.*).
signal, **signum, -i** (*n*).
silent, to be, **taceo.**
simple, **simplex.**
sit down, **consido**
skilful, **peritus.**
skill, **scientia, -ae** (*f*).
slave, **servus, -i** (*m*).
slay, **occido.**
slip (*vb.*), **labor.**
slowly, **lente.**
sluggishly, **segniter.**
small, **parvus.**
smash, **contundo.**
smoke, **fumo (1).**
snail, **coclea, -ae.**
snatch, **rapio.**
so far (up to the present), **usque, adhuc.**
so great, **tantus, -a, -um.**
so often, **toties.**
soft, **mollis.**
soil, **solum.**
soldier, **miles, militis.**
sometimes, **interdum.**
son, **filius, -ii** (*m*).
soon, **mox.**
sorely wounded, **compluribus confectus vulneribus.**
sow seed, **semen manu spargo.**
Spain, **Hispania.**
Spanish, **Hispanus.**
spare, **parco** (*dat.*).
speaker, **orator.**
speech, **oratio.**
speedily, **celeriter.**
spend, **consumo.**
spend a holiday, **vaco (1).**
stab, **confodio.**
stabilise, **confirmo (1).**
staff officer, **legatus, -i** (*m*).
stand, **sto.**
stand near, **adsto.**
stand out, **exsisto.**
standard, **signum.**
state lands, **ager publicus.**
step ashore, **e navi egredior.**
stifle, **comprimo.**
stir up, **irrito (1), sollicito (1).**
storm, **tempestas.**
story, **fabula, -ae** (*f*).
strategy, **consilium.**
stream, **flumen, -inis** (*n*).
stretch out, **porrigo.**
strew, **consterno.**
strong, **firmus.**
stupefied, be, **stupeo.**
stupid, **imprudens.**
subdue, **devinco.**
succeed, **perficere possum.**
success of Marius, **res tam prosperae Marianae.**
successful, **felix, -icis.**
such a kind, **talis, -e.**
suddenly, **subito.**
sue, **peto.**
suffer, **patior.**
suggest, **admoneo.**
suggestion, **consilium.**
suitable, **idoneus.**
summon, **arcesso.**
supplant, **removeo.**
supply, **suggero.**
support, **favor.**
support (*vb.*), **suffragor (1),** + *dat.*
supporter, **amicus, -i** (*m*).
supports, **subsidia.**

supreme penalty, **ultimum supplicium.**
surely, **nimirum.**
surrender, **me trado, me dedo.**
surrendered man, **dediticius.**
sustain (defeat), **accipio.**
swamp, **palus, -udis** (*f*).
swear, **iuro (1).**
swim across, **trano (1).**
swollen, **turgidus.**
Syracuse, **Syracusae.**

T.

take (of persons), **adduco.**
take down (of tents), **detendo.**
take one's seat, **sedeo.**
take up, **suscipio.**
take up a position, **consisto.**
task, duty, **officium.**
tax, **tributum.**
teach, **doceo.**
tend, **curo (1).**
tent, **tabernaculum.**
tent (general's), **praetorium.**
tenth, **decimus.**
tenure of office, **munere fungi.**
terms, **conditiones.**
territory, **fines, agri.**
than usual, **solito.**
the past, **praeterita, -orum.**
there, **ibi.**
think, **puto (1), existimo (1).**
thousand (see obs. 2, p. 20).
threat, **denuntiatio.**
threaten, **minor, impendeo, insto.**
throw, **iacio.**
throw down, **deicio.**
throw into confusion, **perturbo (1).**
throw over, **traicio.**
thrust, **impono, porrigo.**
time, **tempus, -oris** (*n*).
time, at the, when, **eo tempore . . . quo.**
time, for a short, **paulisper.**
time, in a short, **brevi tempore.**
Tibur, **Tibur, -uris** (*n.*).
to the effect that, **ut.**
to-day, **hodie.**
to-morrow, **cras.**
toga, **toga.**
together, **una.**
top (see p. 18).
totter, **labo (1).**
touch, **attingo.**
tower, **turris, -is** (*f*).
town, **oppidum.**
trace back to, **refero.**
trade, **negotior (1).**
Trasimene, **Trasumenus.**
trading-post, **emporium, -i** (*n*).
tradition of ancestors, **mos maiorum.**
train, **exerceo (2).**
traitor, **proditor.**
transport, **transmitto.**
trap, **insidiae, -arum.**
travel, **iter facio.**
tribe (division of *Roman* people), **tribus, -us** (*f*).
tribe, **notio, -onis** (*f*), **gens, gentis** (*f*).
tribune, **tribunus.**
trifles, **nugae.**
triumph, **triumpho (1)**
trivial, **levis.**
troublesome, **gravis, molestus.**
trust, **credo** (*dat.*).
confido (*dat.*).
fidem habeo (*dat.*).
try, **conor (1).**
turn away, **me averto.**

twin, **geminus.**
tyrant, **tyrannus, -i** (*m*).

U.

unanimously, **nullo dissentiente.**
unbending, **severus.**
uncle (father's brother), **patruus, -i** (*m*).
unconstitutional, **contra rem publicam.**
undoing, **exitium.**
unfavourable, **iniquus.**
unfortunate, **infelix.**
universal, **omnis, universus, -a, -um.**
unscrupulous, **sceleratus.**
until, **donec.**
unwilling, to be, **nolo.**
upright, **probus.**
uprightness, **probitas.**
urge, **insto.**
use, **utor** (*abl.*).
usual, **solitus, -a, -um.**
usual, than, **solito.**
utmost, **summus.**

V.

valuable, **utilis.**
vanish, **dissipo (1).**
Veii, **Veii.**
victor, **victor.**
victorious, **victor** (*adj.*).
victory, **victoria.**
village, **vicus, -i** (*m*).
vine, **vitis, -is** (*f*).
visit, **viso.**
vote, **suffragium.**
vote for, to, **suffragor (1),** (*dat.*).
vow, **voveo.**

W.

wage war, **bellum gero.**
wait, **maneo, commoror (1).**
wait for, **exspecto (1).**
wall, **murus, -i** (*m*).
war, **bellum.**
warlike, **bellicosus.**
warn, **admoneo.**
waste, **consumo.**
waste (time), **tero.**
watch, **vigilia, -ae** (*f*).
watch (someone) pass, **iter servo.**
water, **aqua, -ae** (*f*).
way, **via, -ae** (*f*).
weaken, **deminuo, debilito (1).**
weakness, **infirmitas.**
wealth, **divitiae.**
weary, **fessus.**
weight, **gravitas.**
when, **ubi, cum.**
when (in questions), **quando.**
whereupon, **quo facto.**
whether . . . or, **seu . . . seu** (see also p. 72).
whip, **verbero (1).**
whole world, **omnes gentes.**
wife, **uxor.**
win, **adipiscor.**
win (e.g., glory), **pario (3).**
win a victory, **victoriam reportare.**
win office, **magistratum obtineo, ad honorem pervenio** (*ab.* + *abl.*).
win over, **concilio (1).**
win popularity, **voluntatem populi conciliare.**
win support of, **concilio (1).**
win the favour of, **gratiam inire** (*ab.* + *abl.*).
winter, **hiems, hiemis** (*f*).

winter, to, **hiemo (1).**
winter quarters, **hiberna** (*n. pl.*).
wise, **sapiens, prudens.**
wish, **volo.**
with reason, **cum causa.**
withdraw, **me recipio, reduco, excedo.**
withdraw (candidature), **petitionem relinquere.**
without serious losses, **fere sine vulnere.**
withstand an attack, **impetum sustineo.**
woman, **mulier.**
wonder, **miror (1).**
wonderful, **mirabilis.**
word, **verbum.**
work, work hard, **laboro (1).**
world, **orbis terrarum.**
(fig.) **omnes gentes.**
worst (*vb.*), **vincere.**
would that, **utinam.**
wrongfully, **iniuria.**

Y.

year, **annus, -i** (*m*).
yesterday, **heri.**
young man, **iuvenis, adulescens.**
younger nobility, **iuvenes nobiles.**

ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

abdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, to hide.
abeo, -ire, -ivi, or **-ii, -itum,** to go away.
abigo, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, to expel.
abicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, to throw away.
absolvo, -ere, -solvi, -solutum, to acquit.
absum, -esse, āfui (-futurus esse, fut. infin.), to be absent.
accipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, to receive.
adeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, to approach.
adipiscor, -i, adeptus sum, to obtain, win.
addūco, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, to lead to.
adorior, -īri, adortus sum, to attack.
adsum, -esse, -fui (-futurus esse, fut. infin.), to be present.
afficio or **adficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum,** to inflict.
affligor, -i, afflictus sum, to be discouraged.
aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, to attack.
agnosco, -ere, -nōvi, -nitum, to recognize.

ago, -ere, ēgi, actum, to drive.
alloquor, -i, -locūtus, to address.
āmitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, to lose.
āmoveo, -ere, -mōvi, -mōtum, to remove.
aperio, -ire, -perui, -pertum, to reveal, to open.
applaudo, -ere, -plausi, -plausum, to applaud.
arcesso, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, to summon.
ascendo, -ere, -cendi, -censum, to climb.
attraho, -ere, -traxi, -tractum, to attract.
attribuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, to apportion.
audeo, -ēre, ausus sum, to dare.
augeo, -ēre, auxi, auctum, to increase.
aufero, -ferre, abstuli, ablatum, to carry off.

cado, -ere, cecidi, cāsum, to fall.
capio, -ere, cēpi, captum, to take.
cēdo, -ere, cessi, cessum, to yield.
cognosco, -ere, -nōvi, -nitum, to find out.

cōgo, -ere, coēgi, coactum, to compel.
colligo, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, to collect.
colloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, to converse with.
colo, -ere, colui, cultum, to cultivate.
committo, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, to entrust.
commoveo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, to stir up.
comprehendo, -ere, -hendi, -hensum, to seize.
comprimo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, to check
concurro, -ere, -curri, -cursum, to rush together.
condo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, to found.
conficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, to accomplish.
confīdo, -ere, confīsus sum, to trust.
confiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, to admit.
confodio, -ere, -fōdi, -fossum, to stab.
coniungo, -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum, to join.
conscrībo, -ere, scrīpsi, -scrīptum, to enrol.
consentio, -ire, -sensi, sensum, to agree.
consequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, to overtake.
consero, -ere, -serui, -sertum, to join.
consīdo, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, to sit down.
consisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, to take up a position, to halt.

conspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, to behold.
consterno, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum, to strew.
constituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum, to decide.
consulo, -ere, -sului, -sultum, to consult.
consūmo, -ere, -sumpsi, -sumptum, to spend (time).
contemno, -ere, -tempsi, -temptum, to despise.
contendo, -ere, -tendi, -tentum, to march, to hasten.
contingo, -ere, -tigi, to happen.
contundo, -ere, -tŭdi, -tūsum, to bruise.
coorior, -īri, -ortus sum, to arise.
corruo, -ere, -rui, to fall (e.g. of a bridge).
corrumpo, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, to destroy.
crēdo, -ere, crēdidi, crēditum, to believe.
cresco, -ere, crēvi, crētum, to grow.
cupio, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, to desire.
curro, -ere, cucurri, cursum, to run.

dēcerno, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum, to decree.
dēicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, to throw down.
dēlābor, -lābi, -lapsus sum, to fall.
dēleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, to destroy.

dēminuo, -ere, -minui, -minūtum, to decrease.
dēpello, -ere, -puli -pulsum, to dispel, drive down.
dēprimo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, to discourage.
dēsino, -ere, -sii, -situm, to cease (pf. **destiti,** preferred.).
dēsisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, to cease.
dēstringo, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum, to draw (a sword).
dēvincio, -ire, -vinxi, -vinctum, to bind.
dēvoveo, -ēre, -vōvi, -vōtum, to vow.
differo, -ferre, distuli, dīlātum, to differ.
diffīdo, -ere, diffīsus sum, to distrust.
demitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, to send down, to lower.
dimitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, to send away.
dīruo, -ere, -rui, -rutum, to destroy.
disco, -ere, didici, to learn.
discēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, to depart.
dissentio, -īre, -sensi, -sensum, to disagree.
distribuo, -ere, -tribui, -tribūtum, to distribute.
do, dăre, dedi, dătum, to give.
doceo -ēre, docui, doctum, to teach.
domo, -āre, -ui, -itum, to train.
dūco, -ere, dūxi, ductum, to lead.

edo, -ere, ēdi, ēsum, to eat.
effugio, -ere -fūgi, -fugitum, to escape.
ēicio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, to throw out.
ēlicio, -ere, -licui, -licitum, to entice from
ēligo, -ere, -lēgi -lectum, to choose, to elect.
ēlūdo, -ere, -lūsi, -lūsum, to mock.
ēmitto, -ere, mīsi -missum, to let loose.
emo, -ere, ēmi, emptum, to buy.
eo, īre, īvi, or **ii, itum,** to go.
ēripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, to snatch.
ērumpo, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, to break out.
ēverto, -ere, -verti, -versum, to overthrow, expel.
ēvolvo, -ere, -volvi, -volūtum, to unroll.
exigo, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, to exact, to demand.
expello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, to drive out.
extendo, -ere, -tendi, -tensum (-tentum), to extend.

facio, -ere, fēci, factum, to make.
fallo, -ere, fefelli, falsum, to deceive.
fateor, -ēri, fassus sum, to confess.
faveo, -ēre, fāvi, fautum, to favour.
fero, ferre, tuli, lātum, to bring.
fingo, -ere, finxi, fictum, to fashion, to form.

fio, fiĕri, factus sum, to be made, to become.
fodio, ere, fōdi, fossum, to dig.
frango, -ere, frēgi, frāctum, to break.
fugio, -ere, fūgi, fugitum, to flee.
fungor, -i, functus sum, to perform.

gero, -ere, gessi, gestum, to carry.

iaceo, -ēre, iacui, to lie.
iacio, -ere, iēci, iactum, to throw.
immergo, -ere, -mersi, -mersum, to plunge into, immerse.
impōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, to place on.
incido, -ere, -cĭdi, to descend upon.
incipio, -ere, -cēpi, ceptum, to begin.
induo, -ere, dŭi, -dūtum, to don.
ineo, -īre, -īvi, or **-ii, -itum,** to go in.
ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, to enter.
inicio, -ere, -iēci -iectum, to hurl.
inquīro, -ere, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, to investigate, inquire.
irruo, -ere, -rui, to rush into.
instruo, -ere, -struxi, -structum, to draw up.
intercludo, -ere, -clūsi -clūsum, to block up.
interficio, -ere, -fēci -fectum, to kill.
invenio -īre, -vēni, -ventum, find.
invideo, -ere, -vīdi, -vīsum, to envy.
iubeo, -ēre, iussi, iussum, to order.
iungo, -ere, iunxi, iunctum, to join.

lābor, lābi, lapsus sum, to slip.
lego, -ere, lēgi, lectum, to read.
lucesco, -ere, luxi, to begin to shine.

malo, malle, malui, to prefer.
maneo, -ēre, mansi, mansum, to remain.
mitto, -ere, mīsi, missum, to send.
moveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, to move.

neglego -ere, -lexi, -lectum, to neglect.
nōlo, nōlle, nōlui, to be unwilling.

obsideo, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, to besiege.
obsto, -stāre, -stiti, to hinder.
occido, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum, to fall.
occīdo, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum, to kill, slay.
ōdi, ōdisse, to hate.
opprimo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, to oppress.
orior -īri, ortus sum, to rise.

ostendo, -ere, -tendi, -tensum (-tentum), to show.

parco, -ere, peperci, (parsum), to spare.
pareo, -ēre, parui, (paritum), to obey.
pario, -ere, peperi, partum, to bear (children).
patior, pati, passus sum, to suffer.
perdo, -ere, perdidi, perditum, to lose.
pereo, -īre, -ii, -itum, to perish.
perrumpo, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, to break through.
persuādeo, -ēre, -si, -sum, to persuade.
pervenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, to arrive.
peto, -ere, petīvi, petītum, to seek.
plaudo, -ere, plausi, plausum, to applaud.
pōno, -ere, posui, positum, to place.
porrigo, -ere, -rexi, rectum, to stretch out, to extend.
posco, -ere, poposci.
possideo, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, to possess.
possum, -esse, potui, to be able.
praesum, -esse, -fui (-futurus esse, fut. infin.), to be in command of.
praeficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, to put in command of.
praetereo, -ire, -ii, -itum, to pass by.
procedo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, to advance.
proficiscor, -ficisci, -fectus sum, to set out.
progredior, -i, -gressus sum, to advance.
propello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, to dislodge.
prosum, prodesse, profui, (-futurus esse, fut. infin.), to be an advantage to.

quaero, -ere, -sīvi -sītum, to seek.
queror, queri, questus sum, to complain.
quiesco, -ere, -ēvi, -ētum, to remain quiet.

rapio, -ere, rapui, raptum, to seize.
recenseo, -ere, -censui, -censum, to review.
recipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, to receive.
recondo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, to put back.
redeo, -īre, -ii, -itum, to return.
redūco, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, to lead back.
refero, -ferre, rettuli, relatum, to bring back.
relinquo, -ere, -līqui -lictum, to leave.
repello, -ere, reppuli, -pulsum, to drive back or away.
reprimo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, to check.
rescindo, -ere, -cidi, -cissum, to break down.
respondeo, -ere, -di, -sum, to reply.

restituo, -ere, -ui, -utum, to restore.
revertor, -verti, -versus sum, to return.

sedeo, -ēre, sēdi, sessum, to sit.
sentio, -īre, sensi, sensum, to realise.
sepelio, -īre, -īvi, sepultum, to bury.
sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, to follow.
sero, -ere, sēvi, satum, to sow.
sino, -ere, sīvi, situm, to allow.
soleo, -ēre, solitus sum, to be accustomed.
solvo, -ere, solvi, solūtum, to loose.
sto, stāre, steti, statum, to stand.
stupeo, -ēre, -ui, to be stunned.
submergo, -ere, -mersi, -mersum, to drown.
submitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, (with acc. and dat.), to send help to.
sum, esse, fui (futurus esse), to be.
suppleo, -ēre, plēvi, -plētum, to fill up.
sustineo, -ere, -tinui, (-tentum), to support.
taceo, -ere, tacui, tacitum, to be silent.
teneo, -ere, tenui, to hold.
tero, -ere, trīvi, trītum, to waste (time).
trado, -ere, -didi, -ditum, to hand down.
traho, -ere, trāxi, tractum, to drag.
transeo, -īre, -ii, -itum, to cross.
tueor, -ēri, tuitus sum, to protect.

urgeo, -ere, ursi, to beset.
ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, to use.

valeo, -ēre, valui, to be strong.
vendo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, to sell.
vēneo, -īre, -ivi (ii), to be sold.
venio, -īre, vēni, ventum, to come.
vescor, -i, to feed on.
video, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum, to see.
vinco, -ere, vīci, victum, to conquer.
viso, -ere, vīsi (visum), to visit.
volo, velle, volui, to wish.
voveo, -ere, vōvi, vōtum, to vow.

EASIER PROSES

1.

treat kindly, **beneficio** (*abl.*), **afficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum.**
Roman people, **populus Romanus.**
ought, I, **dēbeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum.**
refuse, **recūso, 1.**
invite, **invīto, 1.**
nearer, **propius** (*acc.*).
forces, **cōpiae, -arum** (*f*).
territory, **agri, -ōrum** (*m*).
danger, **periculum, -i** (*n*).

2.

discuss, **ago, -ere, ēgi, actum** (*de* + *abl.* of thing, *cum.* + *abl.* of person.)
fix, **constituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum.**
conference, **colloquium, -i** (*n.*).
greatly, **valdē.**
infantry, **pedites** (*pl.*).
make a request, **peto (3).**
bring, **duco (3).**
be a bodyguard, **praesidio** (*dat.*), **esse** (+ *dat.* of person.) (e.g. **praesidio nobis sunt equites**).
trust, **confido, -ere, -fisus sum** (*dat.*), **fidem habeo.** (*dat.*)
mount (*trans.*) = to place on, **impōno, -ere, -posui, -positum.**
Gallic, use noun, **Gallus.**

3.

scout, **explorātor, ōris** (*m*).
intend, **in animo habēre.**
cross, **transeo, -īre, -ii, -itum.**
river, **flumen, -inis** (*n*).
set out, **proficiscor, -i, -fectus sum.**
prevent, **prohibeo 2.**
there = thither, **eo.**
immediately, **statim.**

4.

shut, **claudo, -ere, clausi, clausum.**
leave (depart from), **discedo, ere, -cessi, -cessum.** (*abl.* or ex + *abl.*).
townsfolk, **oppidāni, -ōrum** (*m*).
previously, **anteā.**
off one's guard, **incautus, -a, -um.**
surrender, **dēditio, -ōnis** (*f*). (Having surrendered, **dēditiōne factā).**
a post (milit.), **statio, -ōnis** (*f*), **praesidium, -i** (*n*).
carelessly, **indiligenter.**
rush out, **effundor, -i, fūsus sum.**
set fire to, **incendo, 3.**
war engine, **māchina, -ae** (*f*).

5.

a very little time, **minimum spatii.**
assemble, **colligo 3.**
out of breath, **exanimātus, -a, -um.**
perceive, **conspicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum.**
weary, **fessus, -a, -um.**
run, **curro 3.**

6.

weary (*vb.*), **dēfatigo 1.**
rampart, **vallum, -i** (*n*).
sluggish, **segnis, -e,** (*adv.*) **segniter.**
side, **pars, partis** (*f*).
flank, **latus, -eris** (*n*).
renew, **redintegro 1.**
vigour, **vires, -ium** (*f*).

7.

sick, **aeger, -ra, -rum.**
be without, **careo, 2** (*abl.*).
food, **cibus, -i,** (*m*).
weak, **infirmus, -a, -um.**
weight, **gravitas, -ātis** (*f*).
nearest, **proximus, -a, -um.**
so far as, **tantum . . . ut.**

8.

winter quarters, **hiberna, -orum** (*n. pl.*).
alarm (*vb.*), **perturbo, 1.**
cohort, **cohors, -tis** (*f*).
promptly, **mātūre.**
break camp, **castra moveo (2).**
message, **nuntius, -i** (*m*).
arrive (place only indicated by context), **adsum.**

9.

on the next day, **postridie (eius diei).**
fail, **dēficio** (*acc.* of person).
break through, **perrumpo 3.**
besiege, **obsideo, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum.**
sentry, **custos, -ōdis** (*m*).
suddenly, **subitō.**
lines = defences, **munitiōnes** (*f. pl.*).
some, **nonnullus, -a, -um.**
his men, **sui, -ōrum.**
main body, **agmen, -inis** (*n*).
dark, **obscūrus, -a, -um.**
night, **nox, noctis** (*f*).
warfare, **rēs mīlitāris.**
experienced, **peritus, -a, -um.**
earthwork, **munitio, -ōnis** (*f*).
careless, **negligens, -tis.**

10.

keep from fighting, **aliquem a proelio contineo.**
gradually, **paulātim.**
withdraw, **dēduco 3.**
overhang, **impendeo, -ēre.**
road, **via, -ae** (*f*).
urge, **hortor, 1.**
corn, **frumentum, -i** (*n*).
promise, **promitto 3.**
supply, **suppedito, 1.**
fail to do, **neglego, -ere, -lexi, -lectum.**
halt, **consisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum.**
turn away from, **āverto, -ere, -ti, -sum** (*ab.* + *abl.*).

12.

be on the march, **iter facio, (iter, itineris** (*n*)).

advance, **prōcēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum.**
further, **longius** (*comp.*).
dismiss, **dimitto (3).**
delay, without, **extemplo.**
some, **quidam, quaedam, quoddam.**
officer, **tribūnus mīlitum.**
disturb (i.e. frighten), **terreo. (2).**
learn, **cognosco, -ere, -ōvi, -itum.**
lay aside, **depōno 3.**
fear, **timor, -ōris** (*m*).

13.

weep, **lacrimo 1.**
chief, **princeps, -ipis** (*m*).
spare, **parco, -ere, peperci, parsum** (*dat.*).
throw oneself, **me proicio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum.**
comfort, **consōlor, 1.**
anxiety, **cura, -ae** (*f*).
set aside, **dēpono, 3.**
harm, **noceo, 2** (*dat.*).
pardon (for some offence), **venia, -ae** (*f*) + *gen.*
oath, **iusiurandum, iurisiurandi** (*n*).
bind, **obstringo, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum.**
conspire, **coniuro, 1.**

14.

mountain, **mons, -tis** (*m*).
discover, **cognosco (3).**
excellently, **ēgregiē.**

15.

front, **frons, -tis** (*f*).
flank, **latus, -eris** (*n*).
make a charge, **impetum facio.**
notice, **animadverto, 3.**
hurl, **conicio, -ere, iēci, iectūm.**
rank, **ordo, -inis** (*m*).
up hill, **adverso colle.**
line of (battle), **acies, -ei** (*f*).
all to a man, **omnes ad ūnum.**
show the back (i.e. to flee), **terga vertere, 3.**
spring (i.e. rush) forward, **proruo, -ere, -rui, -rŭtum.**
sword in hand, **gladiis dēstrictīs.**
fury (of an attack), **impetus, -ūs** (*m*).

16.

spy, **speculātor, -ōris** (*m*).
return an answer, **respondeo, -ēre, -di, -sum.**
bind, **constringo, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum.**
tightly, **artē.**
limb, **membrum, -i** (*n*).
beat, **verbero 1.**
rod, **virga, -ae** (*f*).
stronghold, **castellum, -i** (*n*).

17.

flag, **vexillum, -i** (*n*).
raise, **tollo, -ere, sustŭli, sublātum.**
signal, **signum, -i** (*n*).
trumpet call, by the, **tubā** (*abl.* of inst.).
recall, **revoco 1.**
work of entrenching, **opus, -eris** (*n*).
further afield, **longius.**
rubble, **agger, -is** (*m*).
bring in, **rēduco, 3.**
draw up, **instruo, -ere, -xi, -ctum.**

many, **magna pars, -tis** (*f*).
shortness, **brevitas, -ātis** (*f*).
nearness, **propinquitas, -atis** (*f*).
train, **exerceo, 2.**
previous, **superior, -ius.**

18.

rashly, **temere.**
commander-in-chief, **imperātor, -ōris** (*m*).
advice, **consilium, -i** (*n*).
keep on shouting, **clāmitō (1).**
keep, **contineo (2).**
a great distance from, **longinquus -a, -um,** + *abl.*
headquarters, *use* **imperator, -ōris** (*m*).
push on, **iter contendo (3).**
join (someone), **me coniungo -ere, -iunxi, -iunctum.** (*dat.* or *cum* + *abl.*),
ambush, **insidiae, -ārum** (*f. pl.*).
along (say near), **prope** (*acc.*).

19.

face (difficulties), **suscipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptūm.**
snow, **nix, nivis** (*f*).
foot, **pēs, pedis** (*m*).
carry, **porto (1).**
baggage, **impedimenta, -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
draught animal, **iumentum, -i** (*n*).
endure, **fero.**
cold, **frīgus, -ŏris** (*n*).
supply (*n*), **cōpia, -ae** (*f*).
fodder, **pabulum, -i.**
obtain, **consequor, -i, -ūtus sum.**
drag, **traho, -ere, traxi, tractum.**
spirit, **animus, -i** (*m*).
admire, **mīror, 1.**
reprove, **reprehendo, -ere, -di, -sum.**
avoid, **vīto, 1.**
share, **pars, partis** (*f*).
work, **lābor, -oris** (*m*).

20.

stretch out, **porrigo, -ere, -rexi, rectum.**
hand, **manus, -us** (*f*).
grant, **do (2).**
win, **concilio (1).**
good will, **voluntas, -ātis** (*f*).
tribe, **gens, -tis** (*f*).
sister, **soror, -ōris** (*f*).
a certain, **quidam (qui + dam), cuiusdam.**
by no means, **nēquāquam.**
on account of, **per** (*acc.*).
anew, **de integro.**
break out (fig.), **coorior, -iri, -ortus sum.**

21.

after, **postquam** (put *vb.* in *pf. tense*).
forest, **silva, -ae** (*f*).
at first, **prīmo.**
boat, **linter, -ris** (*f*).
ford, **vada, -ōrum** (*n. pl.*).
engineer, **faber, -ri** (*m*).
plan (e.g. of a bridge), **mŏdus formaque.**
show, **dēmonstro (1).**
build, **aedifico (1).**
timber, **matēria, -ae** (*f*).
cut (into pieces), **scindo, -ere, scĭdi, -scissum.**

shape, **fingo, -ere, finxi, fictum.**
weariness, **defatigātio, -ōnis** (*f*).
rest, **quies, -ētis** (*f*).
sharer, partner, **particeps, -ipis** (*c*), (+ *gen.*).
finish, **conficio (3).**

22.

assistance, **auxilium, -i** (*n*).
not only . . . but, **non mŏdŏ . . . sed etiam.**
dilatory, **neglĕgens, -tis.**
with the people, **apud plēbem.**
magistrate, **magistrātus, -ūs** (*m*).
treachery, **perfidia, -ae** (*f*).

23.

warlike, **bellicōsus, -a, -um.**
milk, **lac, -tis** (*n*).
meat, **caro, carnis** (*f*).
skin, **pellis, -is** (*f*).
live on (i.e. support life by), **vivo, -ere, vixi, victum** + *abl.*
private, **privātus, -a, -um.**

holding of land, **ager, -ri** (*m*).
space, **spatium, -ii** (*n*).
year, **annus, -i** (*m*).
set out on a campaign, **bellum infero, -ferre, intuli, illatum.**

24.

little, **haud multus, -a, -um.**
choose, **dēligo, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum.**
foot (of a hill), **rādix, -īcis** (*f*), (use *plural*).
sudden, **subitŭs, -a, -um.**

25.

count (i.e. consider), **pūto, 1.**
both . . . and, **et . . . et.**
although, **etsi.**
javelin, **pīlum, -i** (*n*).
effective (of weapons), (say 'which gave so serious a wound').

26.

revolt, **seditiōnem facio.**
neighbour, **vicīnus, -i** (*m*).
winter (*vb.*), **hiemo (1).**

ABRIDGED MATHEMATICAL TABLES.
By PROF. SIR HENRY BARRACLOUGH, K.B.E., B.E., M.M.E., M.Inst.C.E., M.I.Mech.E. Parts I and II (complete). 1/6.

RAINBOW-PATTERN ARITHMETIC FOR CHILDREN OF 6-7 YEARS.
By SARIAN NEWTON-RUSSELL and ETHEL A. COTTON. 1/-.

ALUMINIUM TABLET FOR "RAINBOW PATTERN ARITHMETIC." 3d.

SPELLING, GRAMMAR, AND COMPOSITION

ANGUS & ROBERTSON'S SYLLABUS SPELLER FOR PRIMARY SCHOOLS, 3d.

THE SECONDARY STUDENTS' SPELLING BOOK: Specially arranged, on scientific lines, for the assistance of candidates preparing for the Intermediate and Leaving Certificate Examinations.
By GEORGE MACKANESS, M.A., Litt.D. *Eighth Edition.* 9d.

ANGUS & ROBERTSON'S GRAMMAR AND DERIVATION BOOK for use in Schools. *New Edition, revised and enlarged,* 6d.

ENGLISH FOR PRIMARY SCHOOLS.
By J. P. CHARD, B.A. *Second Edition, revised,* 1/3.

PROPER WORDS IN PROPER PLACES. A Manual for the correct use of English Words.
By J. P. CHARD, B.A. 1/6.

THE MODERN A B C BOOK AND PRE-PRIMER.
By ETHEL A. COTTON. *Second Edition.* 9d.

THE MODERN SPELLER. Word Building and Grouping for Children from 6 to 8 years.
By ETHEL A. COTTON. *Sixth Edition.* 9d.

THE AUSTRALIAN SPELLER. A Commonwealth and Dominion Spelling Guide.
By H. G. HAIN. *Third Edition.* 1/-.

THE OPEN DOOR TO PRIMARY FINAL ENGLISH
By SIDNEY A. LENEHAN. *Fifth Edition.* 2/3.

A HANDBOOK OF INTERMEDIATE ENGLISH FOR THE YEAR 1937.
By GEORGE MACKANESS, M.A., Litt.D., and SIDNEY A. LENEHAN. 2/6.

A FIRST ENGLISH GRAMMAR.
By PROFESSOR T. G. TUCKER, Litt.D. (Camb.), Hon.Litt.D. (Dublin). 1/6.

WORD BUILDING WITH ENDINGS ANG, ING, AND, END, ENT, ANT, AMP, ETC.
Designed by ETHEL A. COTTON. Per box, 1/6.

WORD BUILDING WITH ENDINGS CK AND K. Per box, 1/6.

ENGLISH LITERATURE

FIRST STEPS IN THE STUDY OF POETRY.
By J. P. CHARD, B.A. With an Introduction by PROFESSOR T. G. TUCKER, Litt.D. *Third Edition.* 2/9.

SELECTED SHORT STORIES: A group of Myths, Legends, and Short Stories by representative authors from Malory to Galsworthy.
Selected and Edited by JOHN R. LYALL, B.A., Dip.Ed., and BEATRICE LYALL, Dip.Ed. *Sixth Edition.* 2/6.

THE WIDE BROWN LAND. A New Anthology of Australian Verse for Schools.
Chosen by JOAN MACKANESS, B.A., and GEORGE MACKANESS, M.A., Litt.D. 2/9.

FROLIC FAIR. A Book of Australian Verse for Children under Ten.
Chosen by JOAN S. MACKANESS, B.A., and GEORGE MACKANESS, M.A., Litt.D. *Third Edition.* 1/3.

GEOGRAPHY

A REGIONAL ATLAS OF AUSTRALIA AND THE WORLD.
By PROFESSOR J. MACDONALD HOLMES. 74 pages. 3/6.

DESCRIPTIVE GEOGRAPHY FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS. For Leaving and Junior University Classes.
By PROFESSOR MACDONALD HOLMES and J. ANDREWS, B.A. *Fourth Edition.* 437 pages, with 150 maps and diagrams. 6/-.

AN ATLAS OF POPULATION AND PRODUCTION FOR NEW SOUTH WALES.
By PROFESSOR MACDONALD HOLMES. 30 maps, size 7½ x 5½ inches, and 82 pages of letterpress. *Second Edition.* 6/-.

THE WORLD PATTERN. A Geography for Secondary Schools.
By A. G. LOWNDES. Part I, 1/9. Part II, 1/9.

HISTORY

HISTORY OF MODERN EUROPE.
By PROF. STEPHEN H. ROBERTS, M.A., D.Sc. (Econ., London), Litt.D. With maps. *Fifth Edition,* 656 pages. 10/6.

MODERN BRITISH HISTORY.
By PROF. STEPHEN H. ROBERTS, M.A., D.Sc. (Econ., London), Litt.D. and C. H. CURREY, M.A., LL.D. With maps. *Twelfth Edition.* 5/6.

BRITISH AND IMPERIAL HISTORY: A Handbook and Study Guide for Intermediate Certificate and Junior University Candidates.
By H. L. HARRIS, M.A., LL.B. *Seventh Edition.* 2/9.

BRITISH HISTORY 55 B.C.—1688. With an Introductory section on Ancient History.
By C. H. CURREY, M.A., LL.D., co-author, with Professor Roberts of *Modern British History. Second edition.* 3/6.

AUSTRALIA IN THE MAKING. A History.
By H. L. HARRIS. 3/6.

HIGHLIGHTS OF HISTORY. For Sixth Class.
By H L. HARRIS, M.A., LL.B. *With illustrations. Second Edition.* 2/-.

ANGUS & ROBERTSON'S HISTORY OF AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND: for the use of Junior Pupils. *New Edition, enlarged and illustrated,* 1/3.

GREAT EVENTS IN AUSTRALIAN HISTORY.
By JOSEPH BRYANT. *Fifth Edition.* 2/6.

HISTORY OF BRITAIN AND HER EMPIRE.
By R. H. CLAYTON, M.A., Part 1: From the Coming of the Romans to 1660. *Second Edition.* 4/6.

BRITAIN'S FIRST AND SECOND EMPIRES.
By R. H. CLAYTON, M.A. 4/6.

EDUCATION

THE ROMANCE OF SCHOOL. A Headmaster's Retrospect.
By DR C. J. PRESCOTT. 6/-.

OLD EKO'S NOTE-BOOK.
By N. F. SPIELVOGEL. *Fourth Edition.* 3/9.

THE AUSTRALIAN ECONOMY. Simple Economic Studies.
By PROFESSOR D. B. COPLAND, C.M.G., M.A., D.Sc., in collaboration with G. A. WELLER, B.Sc.(Econ.), B.Com. *Fourth Edition.* 4/6.

ELEMENTARY BOOK-KEEPING. Part I. A treatise for High School pupils and University students.
By IVO W. KERR, B.Ec., F.C.A.(Aust.), A.C.I.S. 2/6.

ELEMENTARY BOOK-KEEPING. Part 2. A Treatise for High School Pupils and Universtiy Students.
By IVO W. KERR, B.Ec., F.C.A. (Aust.), A.C.I.S. 3/6.

FRENCH

FRENCH INTERMEDIATE BLOCK VOCABULARY: with Phrases and Grammatical Examples.
By FRANK B. JONES, B.A., Dip.Ed. *Fourteenth Edition.* 96 pages. 10d.

EXPLANATORY FRENCH GRAMMAR.
By FRANK B. JONES, B.A., Dip.Ed. *Fourteenth Edition.* 344 pages. 4/-.

INTERMEDIATE FRENCH HOMEWORK SENTENCES AND QUESTIONNAIRE.
By FRANK B. JONES, B.A., Dip.Ed. With Preface by Peter L. Murphy. *Sixth Edition.* 10d.

LEAVING CERTIFICATE FRENCH QUESTIONNAIRE: with Block Vocabularies.
By FRANK B. JONES, B.A., Dip.Ed. *Third Edition.* 10d.

EASY MATRICULATION FRENCH PROSES: with 100 short sentences, vocabulary and appendix of proses already set for French Paper I, N.S.W. Leaving Certificate Examination.
By FRANK B. JONES, B.A., Dip.Ed. *Third Edition.* 1/-.

THE ESSENTIALS OF FRENCH VERBS (IN FULL).
By FRANK B. JONES, B.A., Dip.Ed. *Sixth Edition.* 1/-.

FRENCH FOR FIRST TERM.
By PETER L. MURPHY, B.A. *Second Edition.* 10d.

FOURTH YEAR FRENCH PROSES: An Introduction to "French Proses for Later Stages."
By PETER L. MURPHY, B.A. *Third Edition.* 9d.

TWENTY EASY FRENCH PROSES: Based on the Second Year Requirements of the New South Wales Syllabus for Secondary Schools.
By PETER L. MURPHY, B.A. *Fifth Edition.* 9d.

FOUR EASY STORIES IN FRENCH.
By PETER L. MURPHY, B.A. *Fifth Edition.* 10d.

FURTHER EASY STORIES IN FRENCH.
By Peter L. Murphy, B.A. *Second Edition.* 10d.

SOUVENIRS D'UNE PARISIENNE AUX ANTIPODES.
By Marie Rousselet Niau. With Preface by Peter L. Murphy, B.A., and envoi by Mlle Soubeiran. *Second Edition.* 6d.

LATIN

PRACTICAL LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.
By J. W. Cornforth, M.A. (Oxon.), and Miss G. E. Edgington, B.A. *Second Edition.* 360 pages. 4/6.

FIRST LATIN EXERCISE BOOK: Suitable for the first two years of High School Work.
By J. W. Cornforth, M.A. (Oxon.), and Miss G. E. Edgington, B.A. 3/6.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR. Book VII. Edited with Introduction, Notes and Vocabulary for the use of Schools.
By J. W. Cornforth, M.A. *Illus.* 2/9.

SCIENCE

CHEMISTRY FOR INTERMEDIATE CLASSES. Profusely illustrated. 367 pages, with 58 illustrations. *Third Edition.* 4/6.

PHYSICS FOR INTERMEDIATE CLASSES. 527 pages, with 296 illustrations. *Fourth Edition.* 5/6.

DRESSMAKING

PROCESSES IN DRESSMAKING.
By E. L. G. Gough, B.Ec. *Second Edition.* 6/-.

THE CUTTER'S GUIDE: A Manual of Dress Cutting and Ladies' Tailoring.
By M. E. Roberts and E. L. G. Gough, B.Ec. *Tenth Edition, with 170 diagrams.* 10/-.

DRESS-CUTTING MEASURE BOOK (for use with "The Cutter's Guide" and "Garment Cutting").
By M. E. Roberts. 9d.

ROBERTS'S METAL SCALE (for use with "The Cutter's Guide"). 1/3.

GARMENT CUTTING FOR GIRLS: A Textbook for Students attending Needlework Classes.
By M. E. Roberts and E. L. G. Gough, B.Ec. *New Edition, with 57 diagrams.* 5/6.

SUPPLEMENTARY READERS

Especially suitable for young readers up to nine years old.

BY AMY ELEANOR MACK

The Birds' Concert and other Stories of Bushland and Sea. 9d.

Flower Fairies and other Stories of the Australian Bush. 9d.

Little Black Duck and other Stories of Bushland and Sea. 9d.

The Fantail's House and other Australian Nature Stories. 9d.

Why the Spinebill's Beak is Long and other Stories of the Australian Bush. 9d.

The Gum Leaf that Flew and other Stories of the Australian Bush. 9d.

Scribbling Sue and other Stories. 9d.

The Adventures of Melaleuca. By Aileen L. Burrow. 9d.

Dot and the Kangaroo. By Ethel C. Pedley. 9d.

BY MAY GIBBS

Practically unabridged from the 5/- editions, with four full-page and numerous other illustrations.

Tales of Snugglepot and Cuddlepie. 1/-.

Little Ragged Blossom, a sequel to "Tales of Snugglepot and Cuddlepie." 1/-.

Little Obelia, a sequel to "Little Ragged Blossom." 1/-.

Two Little Gumnuts. 1/-.

quoque – also for single word
etiam – also for whole sentence
ipse – also for single word
limiting person.

praeterea – moreover.

Consulo + dative → I
consult interests
Consulo + acc. → I consult you
i.e. I ask your opinion.

Halstead Printing Company Limited,
Nickson Street, Sydney

multa nocte → late at night
multo die → late in the day
militia -ae → warfare,

Man
manque

quod ubi accepit – Having heard
these things

quae cum ita sint – under
these circumstances

present participle used
in Obl. absol. takes "e"
Otherwise "i"

Non multum abfuit – very near

Cum — — both
— — and.

non solum modo — — sed etiam
— both — and

die dicta – the day set
aside (for a trial)

vitam agere = to pass your life

Sunt qui putent — there are some

Sunt qui putant — there are so[me]

genuine subj.

He is too mad to be able to do it

dementior est quam qui / ut hoc

bene faciat

compleo takes Genitive

He was too young to become con[sul]

[illegible] minor quam qui / ut consul fieret

nosco = I learn

novi = I know

potior = rather

~~potius~~

potissimum = preferably

optime = above all

occasio = opportunity

paulatim = a little